

HP OpenView Service Information Portal Deployment and Integration Guide

Version: 3.1

Windows® 2000, HP-UX, and Solaris



Manufacturing Part Number: None
January 2003

© Copyright 2003 Hewlett-Packard Company.

Legal Notices

Warranty.

Hewlett-Packard makes no warranty of any kind with regard to this manual, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose. Hewlett-Packard shall not be held liable for errors contained herein or direct, indirect, special, incidental or consequential damages in connection with the furnishing, performance, or use of this material.

A copy of the specific warranty terms applicable to your Hewlett-Packard product can be obtained from your local Sales and Service Office.

Restricted Rights Legend.

Use, duplication or disclosure by the U.S. Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause in DFARS 252.227-7013.

Hewlett-Packard Company
United States of America

Rights for non-DOD U.S. Government Departments and Agencies are as set forth in FAR 52.227-19(c)(1,2).

Copyright Notices.

©Copyright 1983-2003 Hewlett-Packard Company, all rights reserved.

No part of this document may be copied, reproduced, or translated to another language without the prior written consent of Hewlett-Packard Company. The information contained in this material is subject to change without notice.

Trademark Notices.

Adobe® is a trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

HP-UX Release 11.00 and later (in both 32 and 64-bit configurations) on all HP 9000 computers are Open Group UNIX 95 branded products.

Intel486 is a U.S. trademark of Intel Corporation.

Java™ is a U.S. trademark of Sun Microsystems, Inc.

Microsoft® is a U.S. registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation.

Netscape™ and Netscape Navigator™ are U.S. trademarks of Netscape Communications Corporation.

OpenView® is a registered U.S. trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.

Oracle® is a registered U.S. trademark of Oracle Corporation, Redwood City, California.

Oracle Reports™, Oracle7™, and Oracle7 Server™ are trademarks of Oracle Corporation, Redwood City, California.

OSF/Motif® and Open Software Foundation® are trademarks of Open Software Foundation in the U.S. and other countries.

Pentium® is a U.S. registered trademark of Intel Corporation.

SQL*Net® and SQL*Plus® are registered U.S. trademarks of Oracle Corporation, Redwood City, California.

UNIX® is a registered trademark of the Open Group.

Windows® 2000 is a U.S. registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation.

Windows® and MS Windows® are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

All other product names are the property of their respective trademark or service mark holders and are hereby acknowledged.

1. Resources Available While Learning and Using SIP

What This Manual Covers	16
Getting Additional Documentation	17

2. Essential Concepts

Portal and Data Security	22
Authorization	22
Filtering of Management Data	22
Customer Data Segmentation	22
Authentication	23
Firewalls and Proxy	23
Data Encryption Using Secure Socket Layer (SSL) Protocol	23
Distribution Model	24
Scalability Through Multiple Shared Servers	27
I18N Model	28
What You Can Expect From SIP	28

3. Planning Your SIP Deployment

A Road Map to SIP Deployment and Integration	32
Making a Plan	34
Portal Content	35
Worksheets and Questions to Ask Yourself	35
Next Steps	43
Portal Users and Roles	44
Before You Begin Planning	45
Questions to Ask Yourself	48
Worksheets	49
Next Steps	55
The Segmentation of Management Data By Customer	56
Questions to Ask Yourself	57
Next Steps	57
Authentication	59
Portal Authentication	59
External Authentication	59
Questions to Ask Yourself	60
Worksheets	60
Next Steps	62
The Integration of SIP Into Distributed, Wireless, and Non-English Environments	63

Contents

Distributed Environments	63
Wireless Environment	63
Non-English Language Mode	64
Next Steps	64

4. Connecting SIP to Your Management Products

Configuring Management Stations to Communicate with SIP	66
Starting the SIP Configuration Editor	66
Identifying a Host and Configuring Its Management Stations	67
Establishing a Connection with NNM	67
Establishing a Connection with OVO and OVSN	68
Establishing a Connection with OVIS	69
Establishing a Connection with a Reporting Station	69
Establishing a Connection with OVSD	70
Establishing a Connection with OVPI	71

5. Configuring Users and Roles

Understanding the User Role Configuration Tasks	74
Understanding the User Role Model	76
Understanding Basic Roles	76
Understanding Special SIP Administrator Roles	77
Understanding the Three Authorization Models	80
Understanding Management Data Filtering and Customer Data Segmentation ..	82
Configuring Users and Roles Through the Configuration Editor	86
Starting the SIP Configuration Editor	86
Creating/Modifying User Role Packages	86
Defining/Modifying Management Data Filters	88
Creating/Modifying Roles	90
Creating/Modifying Users	96
Verifying that a Portal Works as Expected	99
Configuring Advanced Features of the User Role Model Through XML	100
Location of the XML Files	100
What Gets Installed With SIP	100
Understanding the User Role XML Files	101
Updating the User Role Model After Editing the XML Files	102
Creating/Configuring a Special Portal Administrator Role	103

Designating a Default User	104
Designating a Default Role	104
Changing the Name of the User Role Package File	105
Troubleshooting	107
Role Contains Management Data Filter Not Editable Through SIP Configuration Editor	107

6. Customizing Portal Views

Understanding Portal Views	110
Customization Options	111
Creating Portal Views	114
Logging In to SIP to Customize a Portal View	116
Giving an Administrative User “ViewAdmin” Permissions to All Roles	116
Customizing General Portal View Attributes	118
Specifying the User Name to Display in the Button Bar of a Portal View	118
Choosing the Skin for a Portal View	118
Choosing the Refresh Rate for a Portal View	119
Choosing to Show a User Name in the Button Bar	119
Choosing to Show the Date and Time in the Button Bar	119
Customizing Tabs and Modules in a Portal View	120
Configuring Tabs	120
Configuring Modules	122
Designing a Custom Look and Feel	126
Customizing the Portal Header and Footer	126
Customizing the Skins	129
Portal View DTD	140

7. Developing Portal Content

Understanding the Modules That Are Supplied With SIP	144
Modules that Present Information from HP OpenView Management Products. . .	144
Modules That Display Bookmarks and Messages	145
Contributed Integrations Based on the Generic Module	145
The Generic Module for Developing Your Own Modules	145
Sending Messages to Your Customers through the Message Board Module	147
Developing Messages to Send Your Customers through the Portal	147
Displaying Messages in Portal Views	149
Providing Links to Other Websites Via the Bookmarks Module	151
Developing Groups of Shared Bookmarks	151

Contents

Displaying Bookmarks in a Portal View	153
Adding and Customizing Module Help Topics	155
Adding/Customizing a Default Help Topic	155
Overriding the Default Help Topic	156
Developing Modules that Integrate Your Own Applications and Data.....	158
Process of Creating Integrated Modules	159
Going through the Process: A Tutorial	160
Resources for Creating Generic-Based Modules	161
Designing the Functionality of Your Module.....	162
Creating XML for a Generic-Based Module	163
Adding Online Help to a Generic-Based Module	185
Registering a Module with SIP	185
Restarting the Servlet Engine	188
Adding the Module to a Portal View	188
Testing a New Module	189
Generic Module DTD	190

8. Segmenting Data by Customer Organization

Understanding Customer-to-Resource Mappings	214
Using the SIP Customer Model	215
Using an External Customer Model	215
Creating a SIP Customer Model	216
Creating Customer Model Sources	216
Mapping Organizations to Their Resources	217
Developing a Custom Customer Model Source	220
SIP Customer Model DTD	222
Registering SIP Customer Model Sources	232
Registering a Customer Model Source.....	232
Unregistering a Customer Model Source	233
Verifying That the Correct Data is Being Displayed	234
Configuring the Managed Resources Module	234
Configuring Refresh Rates for the SIP Customer Model.....	236
Refreshing the Customer Model	236
Configuring the Refresh Rate for the Customer Model	236
Viewing Reports of the SIP Customer Model	238
Viewing a Report of One Customer Model Source	238

Viewing a Report of the Fully-Integrated Customer Model	238
Exporting the SIP Customer Model	239
Registering a Customer Model Export Destination	239
Removing a Customer Model Export Destination	240

9. Configuring Authentication

Introduction to Supplied Authentication Providers	242
Choosing and Configuring an Authentication Provider	243
Null Authentication Provider	243
No-Password Authentication Provider	243
Password File Authentication Provider	244
LDAP Authentication Provider	246
Web Server Authentication Provider	251
NNM SSO Authentication Provider	252
Registering an Authentication Provider	254
Developing a Custom Authentication Provider	258
SIP Authentication Model	258
Decide Upon the Type of Authentication Provider	258
Develop the Code	260
Developing a Login Page	262
Developing a Logout Page	263
Make a Custom Authentication Provider Configurable (if Relevant)	263
Register a Custom Authentication Provider with SIP	263

10. Integrating SIP Into Your Own Environment

Configuring SIP in a Distributed Environment	266
Distributed and Shared Configuration Files	266
Configuring the SIP_Path.properties file	266
Whitepaper on Setting Up SIP in a Distributed Environment	269
Setting Up SIP to Use Secure Socket Layer (SSL) Protocol for HTTPS	270
Enabling the Application Server to Serve SIP Data Using HTTPS	270
Enabling SIP to Communicate with a Back-end Server Using HTTPS	271
Enabling HTTPS in the SIP Configuration Editor	271
Configuring SIP to Run in a Wireless Environment	273
Recommended Approach to Using SIP in a Wireless Environment	273
How SIP Works in the Wireless Environment	274
Configuring SIP to Run Wireless	274
Starting SIP in a Wireless Client	276

Contents

Listing of XML Files and Elements	276
Running SIP in Non-English Language Mode	279
Configuring the Browser Settings	279
Configuring Japanese Fonts (HP-UX 11.x only)	279
Configuring the XML Files Used By SIP	280
Scaling SIP: Increasing the Amount of System Memory Used	281
Adjusting JVM Memory Usage Values for the Tomcat Servlet Engine	281
Adjusting JVM Memory Usage Values for SIP Scripts	282

11. Performing Routine Administrative Tasks

Setting Portal Logging and Tracing	284
Viewing Log Files	284
Setting Trace Level and Viewing Trace Files	285
Increasing the Size of the Log File	286
Controlling the Servlet Engine	287
Restarting the Servlet Engine	287
Running Garbage Collector	288
Determining the Amount of Time It Takes to Display Each Module	289
Turning On the Timer	289
Turning Off the Timer	289
Displaying More Detailed Error Messages in the Portal Interface	290
Turning On Portal Verbosity	290
Turning Off Portal Verbosity	290
Improving Performance	291
Monitoring the Size of the NNM snmpCollect Database	292
Checking the Contents of the Role Database	293

A. Understanding SIP Configuration Files and XML

What You Need to Know About SIP Configuration Files and XML	296
Use of XML for SIP Configuration Files	297
Portal Configuration	298
Module Registration	299
Module Configuration	299
LDAP Authentication Configuration	299
Customer Model Configuration	299
User Role Configuration	299

Portal View Configuration	300
User Preferences Configuration.....	300
B. Refresh Model for SIP Configuration Data	
Refreshing Modified SIP Configuration and Data Files	302
C. Rules for Direct Editing of XML Files	
Rules for Direct Editing of XML Files	308
Backing Up XML Files	308
Understanding Editing Permission on XML Files	308
Validating XML Files	309
Avoiding Loss of Changes.....	310
D. Default SIP Portal and Protocol Settings	
Port and Protocol Defaults for SIP Framework, Customer Model, and Modules....	312
E. Configuring Basic Features of the User Role Model Using XML	
Configuring the User Role Model Through XML.....	318
Creating a User Role Package and Adding It to the User Role Model	318
Creating Roles.....	318
Creating Users	322
Assigning Roles to Users	322
User Role Model Elements and Attributes	323
F. Configuring the Message Board and Bookmarks Modules Using XML	
Creating Messages Through Direct Editing of XML	336
Message Display Names DTD	337
Editing XML to Select Messages to Display in a Portal View.....	339
Assigning Messages to a Portal View Using XML	339
Removing Messages from a Portal View Using XML	340
Message Board DTD.....	340
Creating Groups of Shared Bookmarks Through Direct Editing of XML.....	341
Shared Bookmarks DTD.....	342
Displaying Bookmarks in a Portal View Through Direct Editing of XML	344
Adding a Bookmark Entry to a Portal View	344
Grouping Entries	345
Changing the Order of Bookmarks Using XML	346
Removing Bookmarks From a Portal Using XML.....	346

Contents

Bookmarks DTD	347
G. Uninstalling Service Information Portal	
Uninstalling HP OpenView Service Information Portal	352
On Windows 2000	352
On HP-UX and Solaris	352
Glossary	353
Index	357

Support

Please visit the HP OpenView web site at:

<http://openview.hp.com/>

There you will find contact information and details about the products, services, and support that HP OpenView offers.

You can go directly to the HP OpenView eCare web site at:

<http://support.openview.hp.com/>

The eCare support site includes:

- Downloadable documentation
- Troubleshooting information
- Patches and updates
- Problem reporting
- Training information
- Support program information

1 **Resources Available While
Learning and Using SIP**

What This Manual Covers

This manual covers several areas of SIP deployment and integration. It will guide you through the following tasks:

1. Planning your SIP deployment.
2. Connecting SIP to your management products.
3. Creating SIP users and roles.
4. Customizing portal views, including designing a custom look and feel to your portals.
5. Providing content through SIP modules, including integrating your own applications and data.
6. Segmenting management data by customers.
7. Implementing a supplied or custom authentication provider.
8. Integrating SIP into a specific environment, such distributed, wireless, non-English, and especially large environments.
9. Performing routine administrative tasks.

Available also is a glossary, as well as a set of appendixes that include important information such as:

- How SIP uses XML to store configuration data.
- The different methods by which the configuration data can be refreshed.
- A table of default protocol and port settings to reference if you are installing multiple management products on the same machine.
- How to perform some configurations directly through the XML files.
- Procedures for uninstalling SIP.

Getting Additional Documentation

Both printable and online documentation is available. The table below lists printable documents available to you after SIP is installed. All document files are stored in product directories under the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\htdocs\C\manuals\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/htdocs/C/manuals/

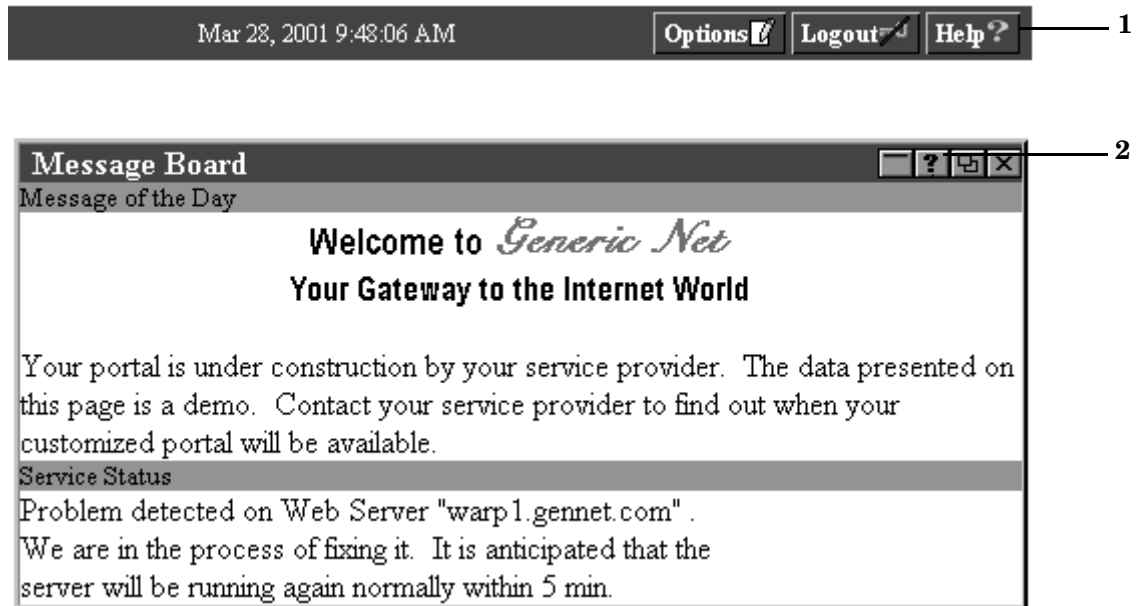
Table 1-1 HP OpenView Service Information Portal Documentation

Document Title	Filename
<i>SIP Installation Guide</i>	SIP_Install_Guide.pdf
<i>SIP Deployment and Integration Guide</i>	SIP_Deployment_Integration.pdf
<i>NNM Integration with SIP</i>	NNM_Integration.pdf
<i>OVO and Service Navigator Integration with SIP</i>	OVO_OVSN_Integration.pdf
<i>OVIS Integration with SIP</i>	OVIS_Integration.pdf
<i>OV Reporter Integration with SIP</i>	OVR_Integration.pdf
<i>OV Service Desk Integration with SIP</i>	OVSD_Integration.pdf
<i>OV Performance Insight Integration with SIP</i>	OVPI_Integration.pdf

Online help is available when you need instruction on the SIP user interface and how to use it. The list of help topics available from the [Help] button on the main portal page differs depending upon the editing permissions—ViewAdmin, UserPreferences, or ReadOnly—assigned to the current role.

Below are sample screens that point out the various online help options.

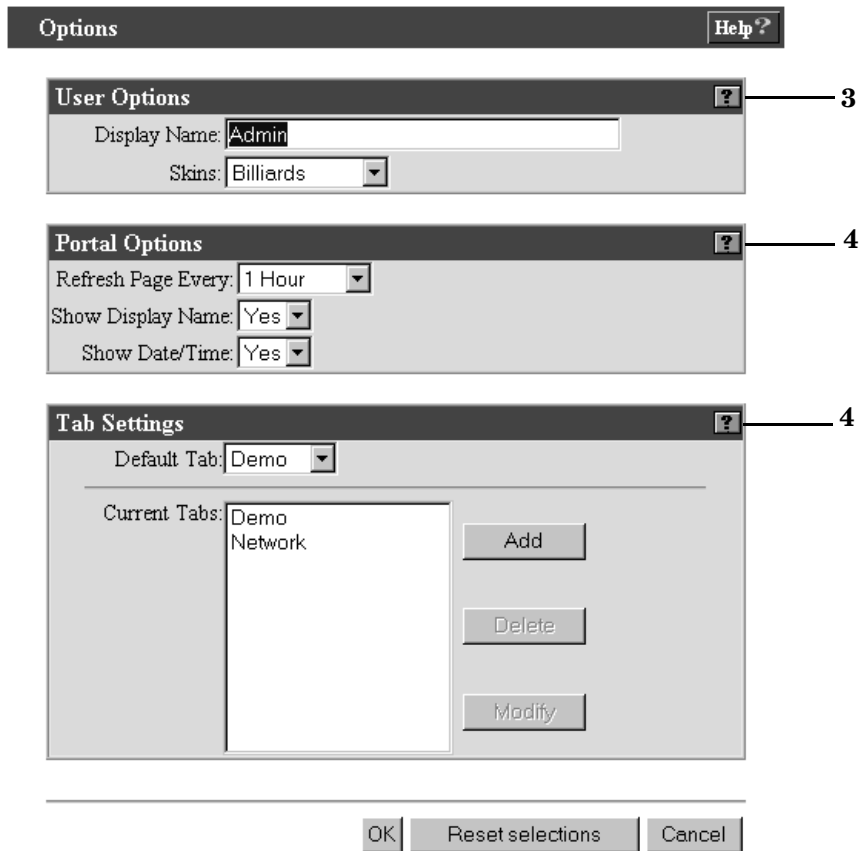
Figure 1-1 Online Help Available from the Main Portal Page



1 - The [Help] button displays help on performing tasks with the user interface. The list of displayed help topics differs depending upon the editing permissions granted to the user. The tasks described do not include module-specific information.

2 - The [?] button on a module title bar displays module help. These topics describe the module and data being displayed and are targeted to your end customers. A help topic for each module is provided by default with the SIP, but you can write your own help topic for a module and override the default topic.

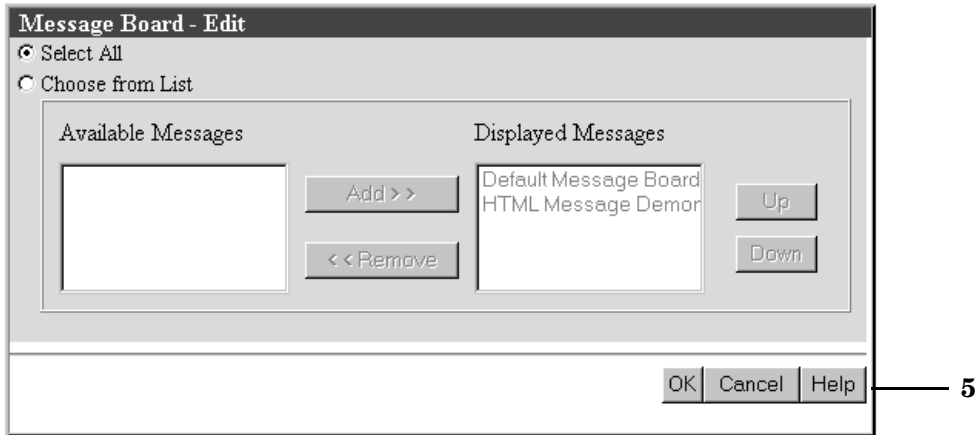
Figure 1-2 Online Help Available from the Options Page



3 - The User Options section and [?] button are visible when the editing permissions level is set to UserPreferences or ViewAdmin for the current role. If a user has ReadOnly permissions, the [Options] button and page are not viewable.

4 - The Portal Options and Tab Settings sections and associated [?] buttons are only visible when the editing permissions level is set to ViewAdmin for the current role.

Figure 1-3 **Online Help Available from Module Edit Pages**



5 - The [Help] button on module Edit pages displays help on performing module editing tasks through the user interface.

2 Essential Concepts

Portal and Data Security

Service Information Portal (SIP) provides a secure environment for your managed data through several mechanisms.

Authorization

Authorization is the granting of access privileges to an authenticated user that determines what the user can see and do while logged into the system.

After a user is authenticated and considered a valid SIP user, authorization ensures that the user sees only the data you want him to see, and changes only the things you want him to change.

SIP uses an authorization model called the User Role model. Access rights are associated with roles. A **role** defines what a user can see and do through the portal at a particular point in time. By associating users with roles and assigning to each role what you want users in that role to be able to see and do, you achieve portal security.

Information in the Chapter 5, “Configuring Users and Roles,” on page 73, will help you set up a secure user role configuration.

Filtering of Management Data

In SIP, management data is filtered at the role level. This involves explicitly associating a filter definition with each role. The filter defines the data to display when a user is acting in the given role. Filtering on a role-by-role basis provides data security, giving you a way to ensure that only relevant data gets displayed to a given user.

Information in the section “Defining/Modifying Management Data Filters” on page 88, will help you create filters for the user roles.

Customer Data Segmentation

Segmenting data by customer organization requires the use of a customer model: a mapping of customer organizations to their resources. This is yet another way to ensure that data gets displayed to the appropriate users.

Information in the Chapter 8, “Segmenting Data by Customer Organization,” on page 213, will help you configure a fully-integrated customer model that contains customer-to-resource mappings.

Authentication

Authentication is the process by which a user identifies and validates himself/herself to the system.

SIP supplies several authentication providers from which you can choose, including ones that enable both outward- and inward-looking single sign-on (SSO). SIP also provides the functionality to integrate a custom authentication provider that you have created.

Information in Chapter 9, “Configuring Authentication,” on page 241, will help you determine the type of authentication provider that best suits your needs, and explain exactly how to configure an authentication provider.

Firewalls and Proxy

Firewalls can be placed between the various tiers of the SIP distribution model for greater security. (See “Distribution Model” on page 24.)

SIP proxy capabilities allow you to (1) Provide restricted access to a web page, web data, web server, and so forth, and (2) Provide access through SIP to management product data without requiring the user to log in to the product. You can also provide the name and password that will be used when accessing the protected data.

Data Encryption Using Secure Socket Layer (SSL) Protocol

You can enable SIP to serve the portal using HTTPS, as well as enable SIP to be a client of HTTPS and get its back-end server content through SSL.

Information in “Setting Up SIP to Use Secure Socket Layer (SSL) Protocol for HTTPS” on page 270, will outline and guide you through the process of enabling SSL.

Distribution Model

SIP supports a three-tiered (Figure 2-1) as well as a four-tiered model (Figure 2-3) for both Windows and UNIX:

- Web Browser Tier
- Web Server Tier
- Application Server Tier
- Management Server Tier

Figure 2-1 SIP Three-Tiered Distribution Model

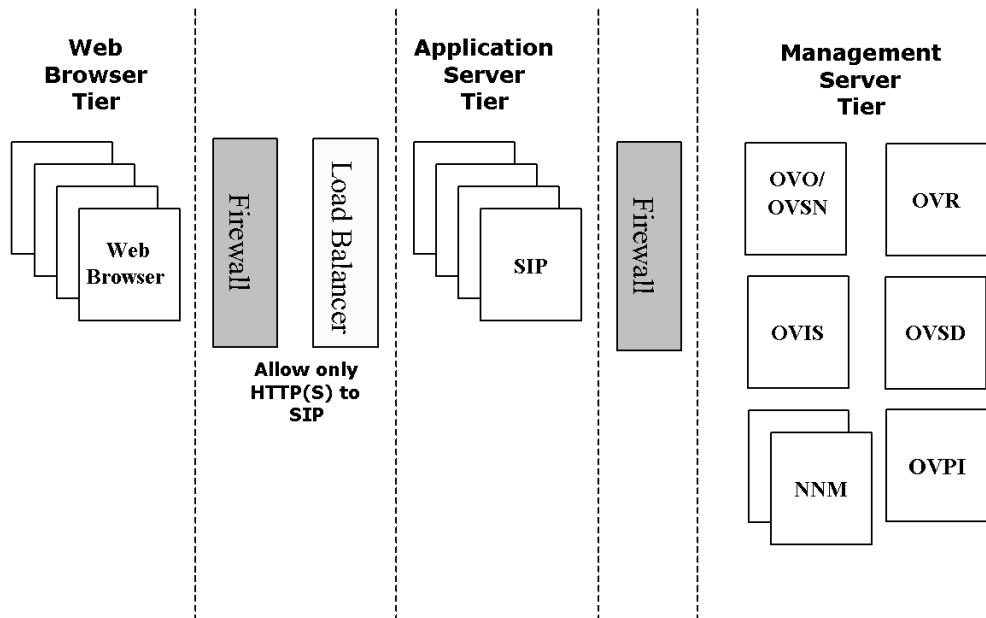
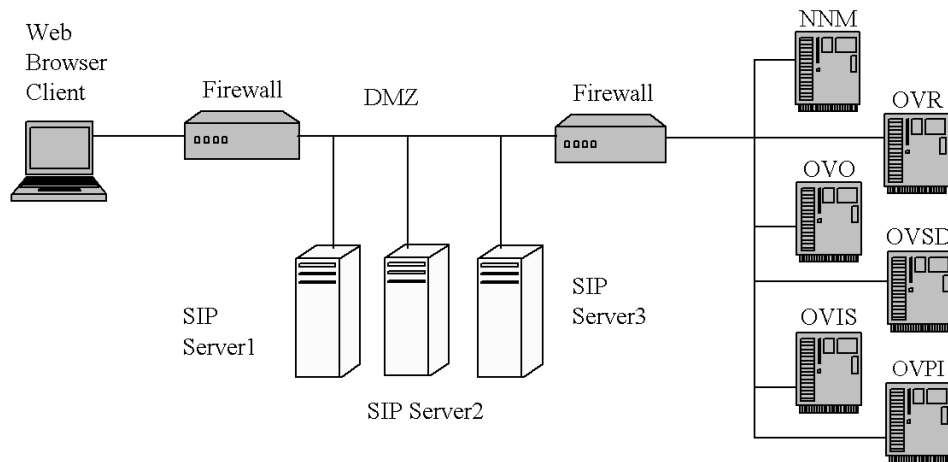


Figure 2-1 shows three tiers--the web browser tier, the application server tier, and the management server tier--separated by firewalls. Between the web browser tier and application server tier is also a load balancer.

The web browser-to-SIP server communication can go through a firewall and only requires HTTP or HTTPS.

The SIP server to management server communication can also go through a firewall. The ports that need to be opened through the firewall depend on the specific management products used. Figure 2-2 shows a distribution model for firewalls. For more detailed information, see “Configuring SIP in a Distributed Environment” on page 266.

Figure 2-2 **Distribution Model (Firewalls)**



You can think of the overall architecture in terms of three parts: the extranet, the DMZ, and the intranet, with each being separated by a firewall. In Figure 2-2, the extranet is everything outside of the firewall and accessible to the outside world. The DMZ (demilitarized zone) is where the client software (SIP) is running. The intranet is where the data servers are running, such as NNM, OVO, and so forth.

Figure 2-3 SIP Four-Tiered Distribution Model

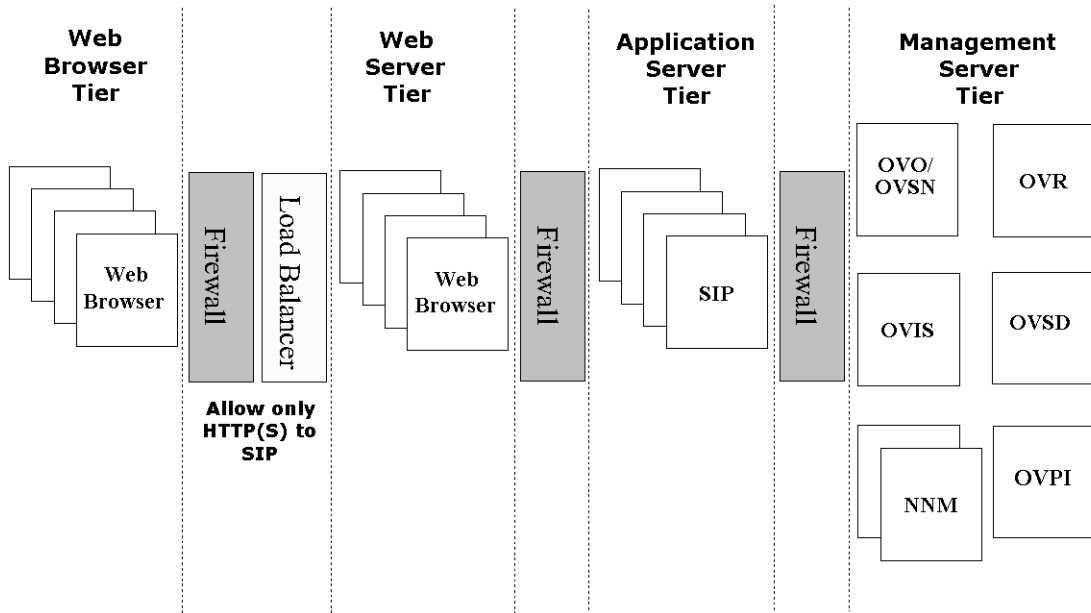


Figure 2-3 shows a four-tiered distribution model. The main difference between it and the three-tiered approach is that the web server is separated from the application server with a firewall in between. Communication between the web server and the application server occurs on a specific port using a specific protocol. By doing this, you can have the web server and the application server on separate machines.

Scalability Through Multiple Shared Servers

Scalability can be achieved through the use of multiple SIP servers, using a Web server load balancer that supports web session affinity. A shared SIP configuration can make it easier to manage the environment.

Figure 2-4 **Distribution Model (Shared Configuration)**

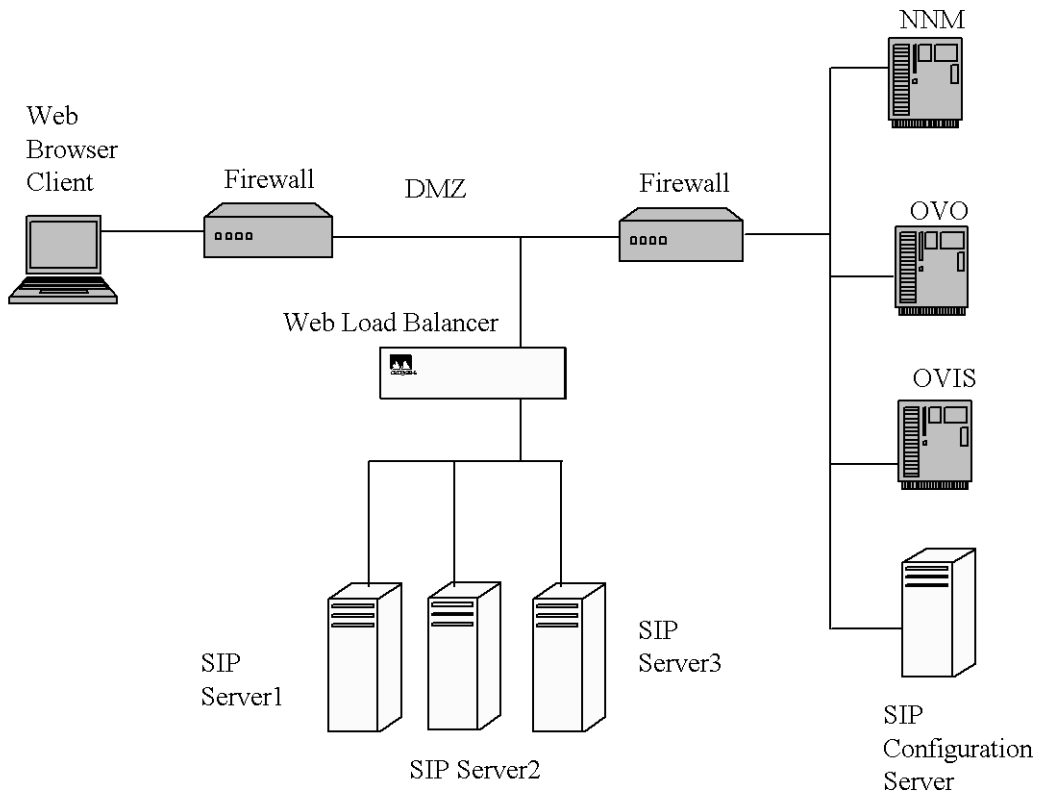


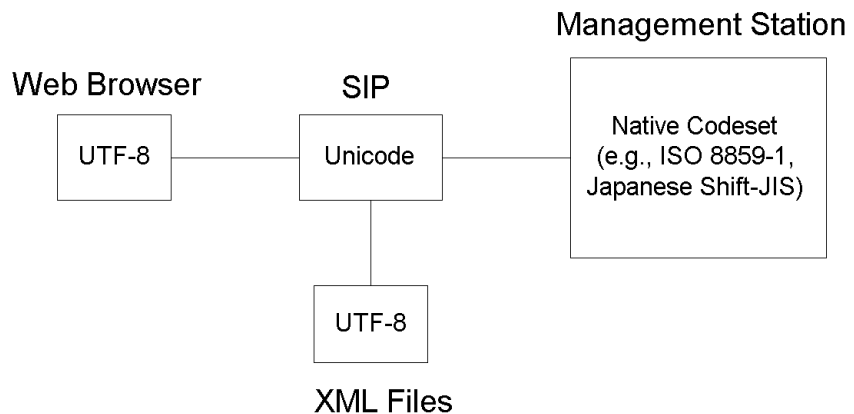
Figure 2-4 illustrates that you can share the SIP configuration across all SIP servers, allowing the SIP administrator to modify only one set of files that are shared globally, instead of having to manually keep the configurations of all three systems in sync, which is a cumbersome task with large installations.

I18N Model

Service Information Portal uses UTF-8 when communicating with the web browser and interpreting data in XML files. When getting data from management stations, SIP converts from the native codeset (such as Shift JIS) used by the management station to Unicode.

Figure 2-5 shows how the native codeset of the management data gets converted to Unicode and then displayed to the web browser in UTF-8 format.

Figure 2-5 I18N Model



What You Can Expect From SIP

Service Information Portal:

- Installs under any language on any language system (such as Japanese NT).
- Uses locale-specific formats for date and time.
- Does locale-specific string comparison.
- Supports one Web browser codeset—UTF-8.

- Displays localized strings that vary based on the locale.
- Displays localized data from NNM (map data), Customer Views (customer names), OVIS, and OVSN.
- Supports non-ASCII string data specific to SIP as long as it is in the UTF-8 codeset. This includes:
 - Module titles specified in the module registration XML files and the portal view files
 - Tab names
 - User and role display names
 - Network Device Health gauge titles
 - Alarm category names
 - Generic module output data
 - Message Board message text
 - Bookmark link names
 - Customer names in the SIP customer model XML files
 - Help files
- Supports ASCII string data only for:
 - File and directory names
 - Login names
 - URLs

Limitations

- SIP does not ship the Java converters necessary to convert non-UTF-8 codeset data into UTF-8 codeset. SIP assumes that these will be part of the JRE on each platform.
- SIP has only been tested in a “mono-lingual” environment where all management servers were in the same locale.

NOTE

For more detailed information, see “Running SIP in Non-English Language Mode” on page 279.

Essential Concepts

I18N Model

3 Planning Your SIP Deployment

A Road Map to SIP Deployment and Integration

The following roadmap is a recommended approach to setting up, deploying, and integrating SIP. This is one of many possible approaches you could take. The iterative nature of some of the deployment tasks and the flexibility of the software sometimes require variations of this roadmap.

To provide the flexibility to use SIP in a way that makes the most sense for individual integrations, each step in the road map indicates whether the step is required or optional.

Table 3-1 Roadmap to SIP Deployment

Tasks	Required/ Optional	Manuals
1. Install and Verify SIP	Required	<i>SIP Installation Guide</i>
2. Migrate From the Previous Version	Optional	<i>SIP Installation Guide</i>
3. Plan Your SIP Deployment	Required	<i>SIP Integration and Deployment Guide</i>
4. Connect SIP to Your Management Products	Required	<i>SIP Integration and Deployment Guide</i> See the SIP manuals that document the integration of individual management products (see “Getting Additional Documentation” on page 17)
5. Configure Users and Roles	Required	<i>SIP Integration and Deployment Guide</i>
6. Customize Portal Views	Optional	<i>SIP Integration and Deployment Guide</i>

Table 3-1 Roadmap to SIP Deployment (Continued)

Tasks	Required/ Optional	Manuals
7. Develop Portal Content	Optional	<p><i>SIP Integration and Deployment Guide</i></p> <p>To change the default module configurations, see the SIP manuals that document the integration of individual management products (see “Getting Additional Documentation” on page 17)</p>
8. Segment Data By Customer Organization	Optional	<p><i>SIP Integration and Deployment Guide</i></p> <p>Configuring the customer model sources varies depending upon the management product. See the SIP manuals that document the integration of individual management products (see “Getting Additional Documentation” on page 17)</p>
9. Configure Authentication	Required	<p><i>SIP Integration and Deployment Guide</i></p>
10. Integrate SIP Into Distributed, Wireless, and Non-English Environments	Optional	<p><i>SIP Integration and Deployment Guide</i></p> <p>Configuring individual modules for a non-English environment can vary. See the SIP manuals that document the integration of individual management products (see “Getting Additional Documentation” on page 17)</p>

Making a Plan

The following questions and worksheets help you gather the information you need when creating customized portals and integrating SIP into your environment. The information gathering process covers all aspects of the roadmap. However, it does so in a slightly different order, as shown here:

- Portal Content
- Portal Users and Roles
- The Segmentation of Management Data By Customer
- Authentication
- The Integration of SIP into Distributed, Wireless, and Non-English Environments.

At the end of each section is a set of “Next Steps.” After you complete the entire planning process, follow the steps to begin the deployment and integration of SIP.

Portal Content

The first step in the planning process is to decide what data you want to display through SIP:

- Content from other HP OpenView products through the use of HP OpenView integrations supplied with SIP.
- General content, such as links to bookmarks and messages displayed to your customers through a Message Board.
- Content from several third-party integrations (contributed and unsupported) that have been developed using SIP's Generic module.
- Content from your own applications and data.

Worksheets and Questions to Ask Yourself

In preparation for configuring SIP to display your content, it is recommended that you answer questions and fill in the worksheets in Table 3-2, Table 3-3, Table 3-4, and Table 3-5.

Go through the worksheets and indicate which modules you plan to use. The worksheets contain the following information:

- Description of the type of content you can display through SIP.
- Name of the SIP module that displays each type of content.
- Management product from which data comes.

Content from Supplied HP OpenView Integrations

Concerning Table 3-2, ask yourself these questions:

- What kind of information do you want to deliver/display to your customers?
- What HP OpenView management products do you want to integrate into SIP?
- Of the HP OpenView integrations supplied with SIP, which provide the kind of content you want to display to your users?

Table 3-2 Content from Supplied HP OpenView Integrations

Type of Content to Display through SIP	SIP Module	HP OpenView Management Product	Plan to Use? Yes/No
A collection of alarm messages gathered from one or more alarm categories within NNM.	Alarms	Network Node Manager	_____
A collection of submaps from one or more NNM maps. Each map must be open on the NNM management station before the desired submap can be displayed in SIP. You can drill-down through the NNM submap hierarchy.	Topology Map	Network Node Manager	_____
Custom gauges that track the health of network devices. Your customers can monitor network performance at-a-glance.	Network Device Health	Network Node Manager	_____
<p>Information from the OVO message database:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A high-level list of the type and number of messages received within one or more message categories. • A complete list of messages received within a specific category. • All known information about a specific message 	OVO Messages	HP OpenView Operations for UNIX HP OpenView Operations for Windows	_____

Table 3-2 Content from Supplied HP OpenView Integrations (Continued)

Type of Content to Display through SIP	SIP Module	HP OpenView Management Product	Plan to Use? Yes/No
A table-like view of services. You can drill-down to details, including actions, propagation and calculation rules, if configured within OVSN.	Service Browser	HP OpenView Service Navigator	_____
A business-card view of a service. You can drill-down to details, including actions, propagation and calculation rules, if configured within OVSN.	Service Cards	HP OpenView Service Navigator	_____
Hierarchical view of the OVSN configuration settings for a particular service.	Service Graph	HP OpenView Service Navigator	_____
A gauge-like view of aggregated service status. You can drill-down to details, including actions, propagation and calculation rules, if configured within OVSN.	Service Health	HP OpenView Service Navigator	_____
Your own custom presentation of Service Navigator data.	Custom Service	HP OpenView Service Navigator	_____
A set of gauges, charts, and graphs showing information collected by OVIS. Information is collected through the monitoring of standard internet services such as HTTP, HTTPS, DNS, SMTP, and POP3.	Internet Services	HP OpenView Internet Services	_____

Table 3-2 Content from Supplied HP OpenView Integrations (Continued)

Type of Content to Display through SIP	SIP Module	HP OpenView Management Product	Plan to Use? Yes/No
The ability for Service Desk end users to submit, view, or modify service calls.	Service Desk	HP OpenView Service Desk	_____
The ability for Service Desk specialists to view or modify incidents, problems, changes, and work orders. Specialists can also submit, view, or modify service calls.	Service Desk for Specialists	HP OpenView Service Desk	_____
Reports generated by HP OpenView Reporter after gathering information from HP OpenView Operations and HP OpenView Service Navigator.	OVO Reports	HP OpenView Reporter	_____
Reports generated by HP OpenView Reporter after gathering information from NNM.	NNM Reports	HP OpenView Reporter	_____
Reports generated by HP OpenView Reporter from HP OpenView Performance.	OV Performance Reports	HP OpenView Reporter	_____
Reports generated by HP OpenView Performance Insight that are configured and deployed to your Performance Insight Web Access Server.	Performance Insight and Performance Insight Browser modules	HP OpenView Performance Insight	_____

General Content

Concerning Table 3-3, ask yourself these questions:

- Do you want to provide your customers with links to useful web sites through the Bookmarks module?
- Do you want to take advantage of the SIP Message Board to communicate with your customers?

Table 3-3 General Content

Type of Content to Display through SIP	Module to Use	Plan to Use? Yes/No
Links to URLs	Bookmarks URLs: <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/>	<hr/>
Messages from you to your customers (announcements, message of the day, and so forth.)	Message Board Messages: <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/>	<hr/>

Content from Contributed (Unsupported) Integrations

Concerning Table 3-4, ask yourself this question:

- Of the unsupported contributed modules provided with SIP, which provide the kind of content you want to display to your users? (Be aware that some of these modules have limitations, such as not supporting proxy or customer segmentation.)

Table 3-4 Content from Contributed (Unsupported) Integrations

Type of Content to Display through SIP	Integration Modules	Plan to Use Yes/No?
A view of the Concord Net Health Web UI.	Concord	_____
A view of the Crystal Enterprise Web UI.	Crystal	_____
A view of the Keynote web site.	Keynote	_____
An NNM 6.2 view of the network discovered using the Cisco Discovery Protocol.	NNM_CDP	_____
A view of NNM 6.2 Command Results.	NNM_Commands	_____
A view of NNM 6.2 Node Details.	NNM_NodeDetails	_____
A view of NNM 6.2 Node View.	NNM_NodeView	_____
A view of NNM 6.31 Node View.	NNM6_31NodeView	_____
A view of NNM reports proxied by the SIP server so the browser does not need direct access to the NNM server.	NNM_Reports	_____
A view of NNM 6.2 Show Path	NNM_ShowPath	_____
A view NNM Web Applications.	NNM_Web	_____
A view of the Opticom iView reports.	Opticom	_____
A view of HP OpenView Problem Diagnosis 1.0.	ProblemDiagnosis	_____
A view of the Remedy ARWeb 4.x interface proxied through the Apache web server.	Remedy	_____

Table 3-4 Content from Contributed (Unsupported) Integrations

Type of Content to Display through SIP	Integration Modules	Plan to Use Yes/No?
The ability for Service Desk 3 end users to view and modify current service tickets. End users can also drill-down for detailed information on a specific ticket and submit a new ticket.	ServiceDesk3	_____
A view of VantagePoint Reporter Reports.	VP_Reporter	_____
A view of WebTrends Reports.	WebTrends	_____
A view of Yahoo Headlines. Users who already have a myYahoo account, will see their personalized view.	Yahoo_Headlines	_____

Content That Integrates Your Own Applications and Data

Concerning Table 3-5, ask yourself these questions:

- What additional content do you want to provide that is not supplied with SIP:
 - Display content from a URL? For example, if you have an HTML file on a different server or a CGI program or other web application, you can display the contents of the URL.
 - Display output from executable commands? For example, if you want to run a command, such as ping or a command that generates results from a database, and display the output of the command in the portal.
 - Display HTML from an external file? For example, if you have a report in an HTML file on the local machine or a tool that generates reports in the form of text, you can display those reports through the portal.
 - Transform XML to a displayable format using XSLT?
 - Display embedded HTML? For example, if you have a tool that generates reports in the form of a GIF image, you can display the report through SIP.

Table 3-5 **Content That Integrates Your Own Applications and Data**

Integrations to be Developed	New Module Entries
New Module: _____	_____
New Module: _____	_____
New Module: _____	_____

Next Steps

Continue making your plan. When you are finished:

- Display content from supplied HP OpenView integrations by connecting SIP to your management products (Road Map, Task 4). You can then configure the default modules, if desired (Road Map, Task 7).
- Display general content through SIP by creating bookmarks and Message Board messages (Road Map, Task 7, Develop Portal Content).
- Display content from contributed (unsupported) integrations by registering the contributed modules with SIP (Road Map, Task 7, Develop Portal Content).
- Display content that integrates your own applications and data by developing your own modules (Road Map, Task 7, Develop Portal Content).

Portal Users and Roles

The second step in the planning process is to identify to whom you want to display data, and understand how to grant them authorization to SIP.

SIP uses an authorization model called the User Role model. Access rights are associated with roles. A **role** defines what a user can see and do through the portal at a particular point in time. By associating users with roles and assigning to each role what you want users in that role to be able to see and do, you achieve portal security.

A basic role consists of four parts, three of which are required:

- **A portal view** (required)

A portal view is what is displayed to a user. It is a configured set of modules and how they appear on tabs. It is also a configured set of portal view attributes, such as name in the button bar, portal skin, refresh rate, default tab, portal header, and portal footer, and so forth.

Several portal views are supplied as samples that you can use as starting points. Be aware that any changes you make to an original portal view will not be made automatically in the portal views that are based upon the original.

- **An editing permission level** (required)

Editing permission levels define the interactive editing operations that a user can perform through the portal interface. Each level of editing permissions includes all the operations defined by the previous level and some additional operations. The three levels are: ReadOnly, UserPreferences, and ViewAdmin.

- **A management data filter** (required)

Management data refers to information about resources, such as services, nodes, interfaces, servers, and so forth, that you want to display through the portal.

In SIP, you must filter management data at the role level, explicitly associating a filter definition with each role. Filtering on a role-by-role basis provides data security. This gives you a way to ensure that only relevant data gets displayed to a given user.

You have three basic alternatives for filtering management data:

- Use the `AllData` filter to allow users of the associated role to see all data from your management stations.
 - Use the `NoData` filter to allow users of the associated role to see no data from your management stations.
 - Use a management data filter that specifies one or more organizations in the SIP customer model. The SIP customer model is a mapping of organizations to their resources (nodes, interfaces, and services). Only the data associated with a specified organization is displayed, thus, segmentation of customer data can be accomplished with this third filtering alternative.
- **An extensible list of role properties** (optional)
Use role properties to do the following:
 - Display customer-segmented data from a management product that has its own customer model that is independent of SIP's Simple Customer Model.
 - Implement a single sign-on solution for logging in to back-end management applications. This solution can be used by modules, including the generic module.

Before You Begin Planning

To help you better understand the User Role model and how it works, look at Figure 3-1 on page 47. It shows the sample users, roles, and views that are supplied with SIP. From this diagram, you can see that:

- Users can be assigned to multiple roles.
- A role defines a portal view, edit permissions level, management data, and optional role properties.
- Portal views are essentially a set of tabs and modules.

After looking at the diagram, log into SIP as one of the users listed in the left-hand column of the diagram. In the SIP interface, switch among the roles and tabs, and correlate what you see in the SIP interface with the configuration in the diagram. When you are finished looking at the SIP interface, go to “Questions to Ask Yourself” on page 48.

Starting SIP

- Open a browser window and enter the URL that starts SIP:

`http://yourhostname/ovportal`

NOTE

Windows only: You can also start SIP by selecting:
Start:Programs->HP OpenView->Service Information
Portal->Service Information Portal

NOTE

UNIX only: If you configured the SIP web server to a port other than 80, use the following URL instead, where port is the configured web server port for SIP: **`http://yourhostname:port/ovportal`**

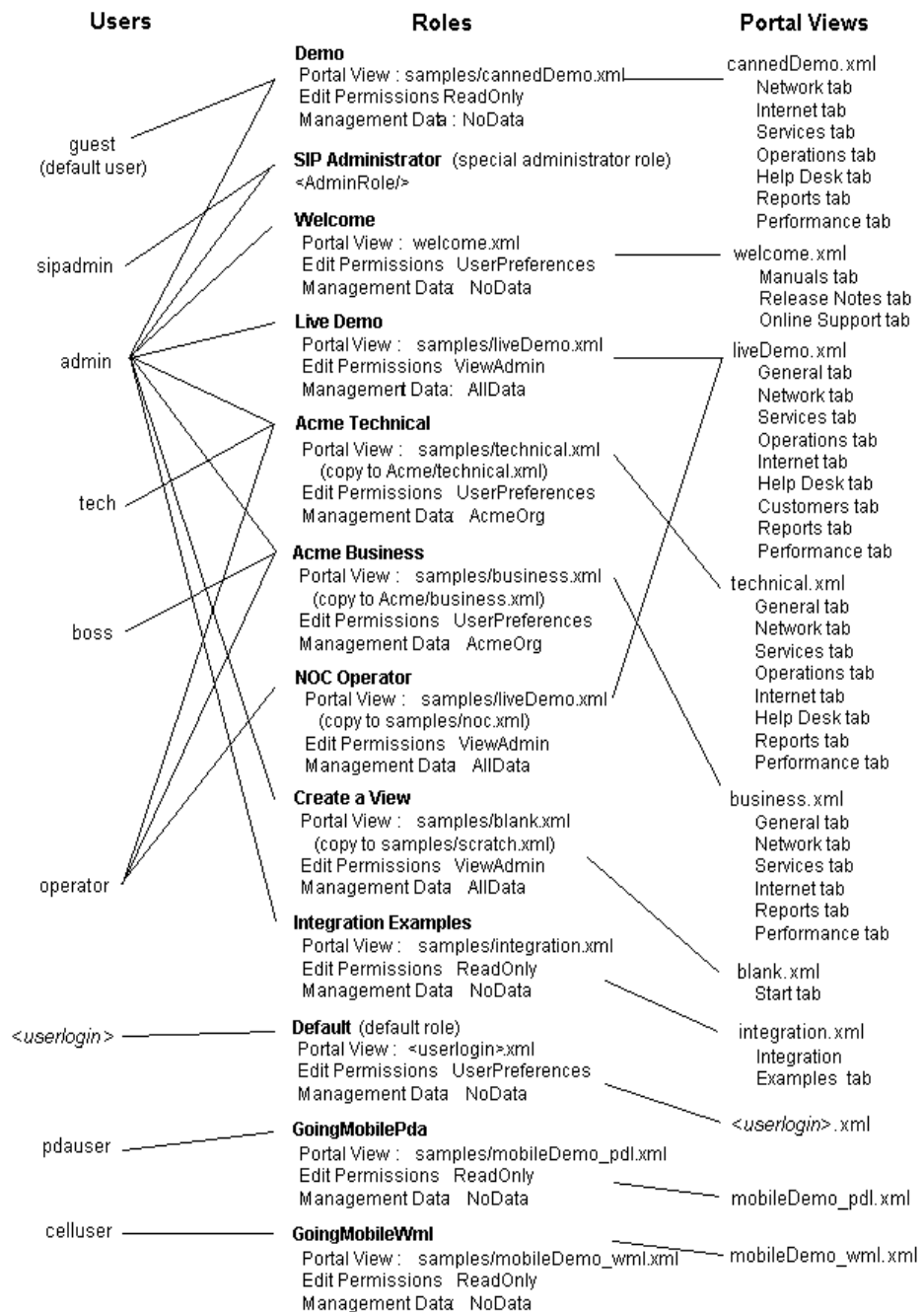
If you are going to run SIP with a secure web server, the URL for accessing SIP is: **`https://yourhostname:port/ovportal`**

NOTE

Until you connect SIP to your management products, the modules will display the message “Currently Not Configured.”

Figure 3-1 shows the sample users, roles, and views supplied with SIP. Each supplied user is associated with one or more roles; and each role is associated with one and only one portal view, management data filter, and edit permissions level.

Figure 3-1 Sample User/Role/View Configurations Supplied With SIP



Questions to Ask Yourself

- Who will be using the portal? Customers? Organizations within a company? Business people, technical people, NOC users?
- Can you categorize the content you want to display based on groups of users, such as business users, technical users, NOC users, and so forth? Do you want to display some modules to business users but not to technical users? For example, business users may be more interested in report modules. Technical users may be more interested in modules that display the details of network and service health.
- Can you identify distinct roles for your users? For example, Operator role, CustomerABC administrator role, technical user role, business user role, and so forth.
- Do you want to give limited administrative privileges to certain customer logins so they can add and configure modules in others' portal views?
- Do you want to use a default role for some or all of your users? If so, do not explicitly configure a user entry for each login. Instead, configure a portal view file specifically for the login.
- Do you want to make available a “default user” who has access to a limited portal? With this user, you might, for example, allow visitors to view SIP without letting them see real management data or be able to perform editing operations.
- Do you need maximum flexibility in defining specifically what each user can see and do? If so, you are required to configure a user and initial role in the User Role model for each valid login?
- Is there a logical grouping of users and roles that you want to manage as one entity? For example, you can create a user role package that contains all of the users, roles, and management data filters associated with one customer organization.
- What modules do you want to display to each identified role? What will you name the tabs that the modules appear on and how will you organize the tabs?
- Can you leverage the supplied portal views as starting points for your own portal views? (See Figure 3-1 on page 47.)
- Do you want to customize the portal look and feel by using your own graphic images in the portal banner and footer?

- Do you want to tailor the portal look and feel to individual customers?
- Are the supplied portal skins (color schemes and fonts) sufficient for your portals, or do you want to create custom portal skins? (Portal skins are changed through the [Options] on the SIP button bar.

Worksheets

The following worksheet (Table 3-6 on page 50) is an empty portal view configuration. Following it (Table 3-7 on page 51) is an empty user role configuration for one customer with three users. When filling out Table 3-7 to create a user role configuration for one of your customer, use Table 3-8 on page 53 as an example.

NOTE

Until you complete the task of creating a customer model (Road Map, Task 8), you cannot define the `MgmtData` and `Properties` for a role. In the meantime, however, you can use one of the default management data filters `AllData` or `NoData`, and leave the `Properties` blank.

Table 3-6 Blank Worksheet: Portal View

Portal View	Tabs, Columns, Modules	Attributes
Portal View Directory and File Name (<directory>/<portalview>.xml): _____	Tab: _____ Column 1 width: narrow or wide? _____ Module: _____ Module: _____ Module: _____ Column 2 width: narrow or wide? _____ Module: _____ Module: _____ Module: _____ Tab: _____ Column 1 width: narrow or wide? _____ Module: _____ Module: _____ Module: _____ Column 2 width: narrow or wide? _____ Module: _____ Module: _____ Module: _____	Default Tab: _____ Refresh Rate: _____ Skin: _____ Show Date and Time? Y/N _____ Show User Name? Y/N _____ User Name? _____ Help Topic: custom or default? _____ Header: custom or default? _____ Footer: custom or default? _____

Table 3-7 **Blank Worksheet: User Role Configuration for Customer:** _____

Users	Roles Associated with User	Portal View Associated with Role
<p>User:</p> <p>_____</p>	<p>Role: _____</p> <p>Portal View: _____</p> <p>copy on write: _____</p> <p>Edit Permissions: _____</p> <p>Mgmt Data: _____</p> <p>Properties:</p> <p>name= _____ value= _____</p> <p>name= _____ value= _____</p> <p>name= _____ value= _____</p> <p>name= _____ value= _____</p> <p>Role: _____</p> <p>Portal View: _____</p> <p>copy on write: _____</p> <p>Edit Permissions: _____</p> <p>Mgmt Data: _____</p> <p>Properties:</p> <p>name= _____ value= _____</p> <p>name= _____ value= _____</p> <p>name= _____ value= _____</p> <p>name= _____ value= _____</p> <p>Role: _____</p> <p>Role: _____</p>	<p>Portal View:</p> <p>_____ .xml</p> <p>Tab: _____</p> <p>Modules: _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>Tab: _____</p> <p>Modules: _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>Portal View:</p> <p>_____ .xml</p> <p>Tab: _____</p> <p>Modules: _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>Tab: _____</p> <p>Modules: _____</p> <p>_____</p>

Table 3-7 **Blank Worksheet: User Role Configuration for Customer:** _____

Users	Roles Associated with User	Portal View Associated with Role
User: _____	Role: _____ Portal View: _____ copy on write: _____ Edit Permissions: _____ Mgmt Data: _____ Properties: name=_____ value=_____ name=_____ value=_____ name=_____ value=_____ name=_____ value=_____	Portal View: _____ .xml Tab: _____ Modules: _____ _____ Tab: _____ Modules: _____ _____ Tab: _____ Modules: _____ _____
User: _____	Role: _____ Portal View: _____ copy on write: _____ Edit Permissions: _____ Mgmt Data: _____ Properties: name=_____ value=_____ name=_____ value=_____ name=_____ value=_____ name=_____ value=_____	Portal View: _____ .xml Tab: _____ Modules: _____ _____ Tab: _____ Modules: _____ _____ Tab: _____ Modules: _____ _____

Table 3-8 Sample User Role Configuration for Customer: BestCorp

Users	Roles Associated with User	Portal View Associated with Role
adminBestCorp	<p>BestCorp Admin</p> <p>Portal View: samples/customeradmin.xml copy on write: BestCorp/customeradmin.xml</p> <p>Edit Perms: ViewAdmin</p> <p>Mgmt Data: BestCorpOrg</p> <p>Properties: VPIS.server=aa.bbb.com VPIS.customer=BC VPIS.password=bcuser</p> <p>ServiceDesk.SSPserver=xx.yyy.com ServiceDesk.userName=BC ServiceDesk.password=bcSD ServiceDesk.virtualDirectory=sd-sp4</p> <p>OVPI.server=jj.kkk.com OVPI.userName=BC OVPI.password=bcpi</p> <p>-----</p> <p>Create a View</p> <p>Portal View: samples/blank.xml copy on write: BestCorp/scratch.xml</p> <p>Edit Perms: ViewAdmin</p> <p>Mgmt Data: BestCorpOrg</p> <p>-----</p> <p>BestCorp Technical</p> <p>-----</p> <p>BestCorp Business</p>	<p>customeradmin.xml</p> <p>General tab: Bookmarks and Message Board modules</p> <p>Customers tab: User Role Information and Managed Resources modules</p> <p>-----</p> <p>blank.xml</p> <p>Start tab: no modules</p> <p>-----</p> <p>-----</p>

Table 3-8 Sample User Role Configuration for Customer: BestCorp

Users	Roles Associated with User	Portal View Associated with Role
<p>tech</p>	<p>BestCorp Technical</p> <p>Portal View: samples/technical.xml copy on write: BestCorp/technical.xml</p> <p>Edit Perms: UserPreferences</p> <p>Mgmt Data: BestCorpIT</p> <p>Properties: VPIS.server=aa.bbb.com VPIS.customer=BC VPIS.password=bcuser</p> <p>ServiceDesk.SSPserver=xx.yyy.com ServiceDesk.userName=BC ServiceDesk.password=bcSD ServiceDesk.virtualDirectory=sd-sp4</p> <p>OVPI.server=jj.kkk.com OVPI.userName=BC OVPI.password=bcpi</p>	<p>technical.xml</p> <p>General tab: Bookmarks and Message Board, Managed Resources modules</p> <p>Network tab: Network Device Health, Alarms, Topology modules</p> <p>Services tab: Service Cards, Service Health, Service Browser, Service Graph modules</p> <p>Operations tab: OVO Message modules</p> <p>Internet tab: Internet Services modules</p> <p>Help Desk tab: Service Desk for Specialists module</p> <p>Reports tab: OV Performance Reports module</p> <p>Performance tab: OV Performance Insight Browser module</p>

Table 3-8 Sample User Role Configuration for Customer: BestCorp

Users	Roles Associated with User	Portal View Associated with Role
boss	<p>BestCorpBusiness</p> <p>Portal View: samples/business.xml copy to: BestCorp/business.xml</p> <p>Edit Perms: UserPreferences</p> <p>Mgmt Data: BestCorpMgmt</p> <p>Properties: VPIS.server=aa.bbb.com VPIS.customer=BC VPIS.password=bcuser</p> <p>ServiceDesk.SSPserver=xx.yyy.com ServiceDesk.userName=BC ServiceDesk.password=bcSD ServiceDesk.virtualDirectory=sd-sp4</p> <p>OVPI.server=jj.kkk.com OVPI.userName=BC OVPI.password=bcpi</p>	<p>business.xml</p> <p>General tab: Bookmarks and Message Board modules</p> <p>Network tab: Network Device Health, Topology modules</p> <p>Services tab: Service Cards, Service Health, Service Browser, Service Graph modules</p> <p>Internet tab: Internet Services modules</p> <p>Reports tab: OV Performance Reports module</p> <p>Performance tab: OV Performance Insight module</p>

Next Steps

Continue making your plan. When you are finished:

- Configure the User Role model by creating users and roles through the SIP Configuration Editor (Road Map, Task 5).
- Create a custom portal look and feel by customizing the portal views (Road Map, Task 6).

The Segmentation of Management Data By Customer

The third step in the planning process is to think about your customers and how to display management data that is relevant to them. This involves providing SIP with a mapping between your customers and their resources.

Segmenting data by customer organization requires the use of a customer model: a mapping of customer organizations to their resources. Table 3-9 shows which supplied modules use the SIP customer model, which use their own customer model, and which do no data filtering.

Table 3-9 The Use of Customer Models By Supplied Modules

Management Software/ Modules	Use the SIP Customer Model	Use Their Own Customer Model	Do No Filtering of Management Data
NNM: Alarms, Topology Map, and Network Device Health modules	X		
OVIS: Internet Services module		X	
OV Reporter modules	X		
OVO/OVSN modules	X		
OVSD modules		X	
OVPI modules		X	
Message Board module			X
Bookmarks module			X

Questions to Ask Yourself

Answers to the following questions will help you prepare to display, through SIP, management data that is segmented by customer organization.

- If you use Customer Views for NNM, do you want to use the customer model configured through Customer Views to display segmented NNM data in SIP?
- If you do not use Customer Views for NNM, do you still want to display segmented NNM data in SIP? You can create a customer model source that retrieves resource data from the NNM object database, and create a customer model source that maps the resources to organizations.
- Besides NNM data, is there other data that you want to segment by nodes or interfaces?
- Do you want to display customer-segmented service information from HP OpenView Service Navigator? If so, you will need to set up a customer model source (an XML file) that contains mappings from customers to services.
- Are you displaying data from products that have their own customer models, such as HP OpenView Internet Services and HP OpenView Service Desk?
- Do you want to display customer-segmented NNM Reports? Do you want to display OV Performance Reports? Both are generated by OV Reporter by exporting the SIP customer model to those products.
- Do you have customer model data in another product or database that you want to import to SIP? If so, you will need to create a custom customer model data source.
- Do you have another product or database to which you want to export the SIP customer model? (This would allow the other product to segment data based on the SIP customer model.)

Next Steps

Continue making your plan. When you are finished:

The Segmentation of Management Data By Customer

- Set up the SIP customer model by developing the customer model sources and registering them with SIP (Road Map, Task 8). This task varies depending upon the individual management product, so see the SIP manuals that document the individual management products.
- Export the SIP customer model to NNM or OV Reporter through supplied CGI programs and servlets. Register the export destinations with SIP (Road Map, Task 8).

Authentication

The fourth step in the planning process is to consider the mechanism by which SIP users will be authenticated. Authentication is the process by which users identify and validate themselves to the system.

SIP supplies several authentication providers to choose from. If none of the supplied authentication providers meets your needs, you can write and integrate your own custom authentication provider. SIP provides APIs and sample code to write your own Java class to integrate with SIP.

Of the supplied authentication providers, there are two types: those that do portal authentication and those that do external authentication.

Portal Authentication

The portal itself can display a login page and perform authentication using services provided by the configured authentication provider. In this model, the user logs in to the portal, and can log out from the portal independently of login to any other authentication system.

In this type of authentication model, SIP gathers the user name and password from the user and then uses the authentication services or data source defined for the authentication provider to determine if the user is authenticated.

External Authentication

In this type of authentication provider, SIP never sees the password for the user. Some authentication service determines that the user has been authenticated and merely provides SIP with the user name. Based on the configured external authentication provider, SIP trusts that the user has been appropriately authenticated. The scope and duration of the user's authentication are defined externally, and are not a concern of SIP. SIP need only recognize whether or not the user is authenticated.

An external authentication provider can be used to make SIP a part of a larger single sign-on solution.

The Web Server Authentication Provider provided with SIP is an example of an external authentication provider. If the web server supports one of the various forms of authentication performed by the

Web Server (HTTP Basic, HTTP Digest, HTTPS Client, or Windows NT Challenge/Response), and the portal administrator has configured it, the authentication provider class must merely recognize whether a user has already been authenticated. In this model, the scope and duration of the user's authentication are defined by the Web Server.

Questions to Ask Yourself

It is recommended that you answer the following questions for yourself and then fill out the worksheet in preparation for configuring an authentication provider. For information on portal authentication versus external authentication, see

- Do you want SIP to perform the authentication or do you want an external mechanism to authenticate the user? The external mechanism can communicate to SIP whether the user has been authenticated.
- Will your portal users log in to SIP and log out of it as a standalone program, or will they run SIP from some other program?
- Do you want code that is integrated with the portal to do the authentication, or do you want to redirect the authentication responsibilities to some other program, system, or server?
- Do you want to use a supplied authentication provider? (See Table 3-10 on page 61.)
- If none of the supplied authentication providers meet your needs, do you want to develop your own authentication provider?

Worksheets

The following worksheet describes each authentication provider supplied with SIP. Go through the worksheet and indicate which authentication provider you plan to use. You can only use one authentication provider for a SIP server.

Table 3-10 Supplied Authentication Providers

Supplied Authentication Provider	Description	Plan to Use Yes/No?
Null Authentication Provider	No authentication is performed and no user name is required. Anyone who requests the portal becomes the user “anyuser.”	_____
No-Password Authentication Provider	This is the default authentication provider. Requires only a user name. The user name must match the name of a user in the User Role Model (unless the defaulting mechanisms, such as a default user, are used, no authentication is performed. This provider is useful when you want to set up and try out portal views for different users.	_____
Password File Authentication Provider	Requires a user name and password. The password is stored encrypted, using UNIX <code>crypt(3)</code> . The supplied password is encrypted and compared to the stored password.	_____
LDAP Authentication Provider	Requires a user name and password. SIP connects to the LDAP server, discovers whether the user name and password can be authenticated, then disconnects from the LDAP server.	_____
Web-Server Authentication Provider	No user name and password are required if the user has already been authenticated by the web server and browser.	_____
NNM SSO Authentication Provider	No user name and password are required if the user has already been authenticated by the NNM Session Manager web login mechanism. This authentication provider requires that NNM is running on the same host as SIP.	_____

Next Steps

Continue making your plan. When you are finished:

- Use one of the supplied authentication providers by registering it with SIP (Road Map, Task 9).
- Create a custom authentication provider by developing it and then registering it with SIP (Road Map, Task 9).

The Integration of SIP Into Distributed, Wireless, and Non-English Environments

The last step in the planning process is to identify whether you plan to integrate SIP into one of the following environments: distributed, wireless, and Non-English language.

Distributed Environments

Using HTTP or HTTPS you can distribute and share the SIP configuration among multiple SIP servers. Configuration changes only need to be made in one place instead of on each SIP server, so it is easier to maintain multiple SIP servers. The SIP configuration server can be in the DMZ or behind another firewall.

Answer the following questions to help you integrate SIP into a distributed environment:

- Where will the SIP servers be deployed? In a DMZ?
- How many users will be accessing the portal?
- Will HTTPS be used to talk to the SIP servers?
- How many SIP servers will be needed to support the number of users?
- Will a web server load balancer be used?
- Will SIP configuration be distributed and shared?
- Will a firewall be used between the SIP server and the management servers?

Wireless Environment

You can configure SIP to run in a wireless environment.

- Do you want to display data through any of following modules on a PDA or cell phone?
 - NNM Network Device Health and Alarms modules
 - OVO Messages module

- Service Health and Service Cards modules
- Internet Services module
- Bookmarks and Message Board modules

Non-English Language Mode

SIP supports display of characters in UTF-8 code set to the web browser.

- Do you want to run SIP in a non-English language mode?

Next Steps

Continue making your plan. When you are finished:

- Integrate SIP into a distributed environment by configuring entries in the `SIPPath.properties` file. See the whitepaper on “Configuring Service Information Portal (SIP) to Work Within a Distributed Secure Environment” (Road Map, Task 10).
- Configure SIP to deploy portals in a wireless environment. (Road Map, Task 10).
- Integrate SIP into a non-English language environment by configuring browser settings and other general settings (Road Map, Task 10).

4 Connecting SIP to Your Management Products

Configuring Management Stations to Communicate with SIP

Before you can view management data through the portal, you must establish a connection between SIP and your management servers.

For OpenView management products (NNM, OVO/OVSN, OVIS, OVR, OVPI, and OVSD), SIP provides a tool to assist you in setting up connections—the **SIP Configuration Editor**. Table 4-1 below shows how the SIP Configuration Editor can be used to establish these connections. The Role Properties configuration refers to the method used by OVIS, OVSD, and OVPI of associating roles with customer-to-resource mappings.

It is very important to follow the instructions in the SIP manual for each specific management product to fully configure communication with SIP.

Table 4-1 Use of the SIP Configuration Editor by Supplied OpenView Integrations

Product	Management Station Configuration	Role Properties Configuration
NNM	X	
OVO/OVSN	X	
OVIS	X	X
OVR	X	
OVSD		X
OVPI		X

Starting the SIP Configuration Editor

- *Windows:* Start:Programs->HP OpenView->Service Information Portal->Configuration Editor
(or from a command prompt, type: SIPConfig.)
- *UNIX:* /opt/OV/SIP/bin/SIPConfig

Identifying a Host and Configuring Its Management Stations

1. In the SIP Configuration Editor, select:
Edit:New->Management Station
2. Enter the Fully Qualified Hostname of the server on which the management software is installed. For example, host.corp.com.
3. Click [OK].
4. Select the tab for the management software installed on this host.

NOTE

The configuration settings in this dialog box accomplish part of the required steps to establish communication. For information on how to fully establish communication with SIP, you must follow the instructions in the SIP manuals that explain the individual management product integrations.

5. Click [Help] if you need assistance with the configuration settings.
6. Select another tab if you want to configure more than one management software package on this server.
7. If no other management stations are running on this host, click [OK] to return to the main SIP Configuration Editor screen, and then click [Save].

NOTE

Configuration changes are saved only when you click the [Save] button from the main SIP Configuration Editor screen, not when you click the [OK] button at the bottom of the dialog.

Establishing a Connection with NNM

The Service Information Portal runs independently from NNM, but you can configure the two applications to work together. Through SIP, NNM can provide up-to-date network information, such as alarms, maps, device status, and any requested SNMP data.

Configuring Management Stations to Communicate with SIP

Two tasks are required to establish communication between SIP and NNM:

1. **On the SIP server, configure your NNM management servers.**

Done through the SIP Configuration Editor, and explained in the online help.

2. **On the NNM management station, allow SIP to get information from the server.**

Explained in “Establishing Communication Between SIP and NNM” in the manual *Network Node Manager Integration with Service Information Portal* (NNM_Integration.pdf).

Establishing a Connection with OVO and OVSN

The Service Information Portal runs independently from OpenView Operations (OVO) and OpenView Service Navigator (OVSN), but you can configure the applications to work together. Through SIP, OVO for Windows and OVO for UNIX can display up-to-date OVO messages, and OVSN can provide service management data to your customers through several OVSN modules.

Two tasks are required to establish communication between SIP and OVO:

1. **On the SIP server, configure your OVO servers.**

Done through the SIP Configuration Editor, and explained in online help and in “Establishing Communication Between OVO and SIP” in the manual *OVO and Service Navigator Integration with Service Information Portal* (OVO_OVSN_Integration.pdf).

2. **On the OVO (for UNIX) server, define the port numbers through which SIP can communicate with OVO and Service Navigator. On OVO (for Windows) server, place a SIP-supplied script into a virtual directory on the web server where OVO Windows is running.**

Explained in “Establishing Communication Between OVO and SIP” in the manual *OVO and Service Navigator Integration with Service Information Portal* (OVO_OVSN_Integration.pdf).

Establishing a Connection with OVIS

OpenView Internet Services (OVIS) collects information about internet services and displays the data in SIP as a set of gauges and charts. SIP communicates with OVIS and requests information for display through the gauges, or it requests that OVIS generate images that SIP will present through the Internet Services module.

Three tasks are required to establish communication between SIP and OVIS:

1. **On the SIP server, configure your OVIS servers.**

Done through the SIP Configuration Editor, and explained in the online help.

2. **On the OVIS measurement server.**

Make sure OVIS is running in the appropriate mode for your version of the OVIS software (explained in “Establishing Communication Between OVIS and SIP” in *OVIS Integration with Service Information Portal* (OVIS_Integration.pdf)).

3. **On the SIP server, define the OVIS server and customer (and password if OVIS is running in secure mode) on a role-by-role basis.**

Done through the SIP Configuration Editor, and explained in the online help and in the manual *OVIS Integration with Service Information Portal* (OVIS_Integration.pdf).

Establishing a Connection with a Reporting Station

The SIP Reporter modules display reports received from OpenView Reporter (OVR). In order to provide these reports, OpenView Reporter gathers data from multiple OpenView products. Communication among these products must be configured and working in order to display the information through SIP modules.

Several tasks are required to establish communication between SIP, OpenView Reporter, and the other products from which reporting data is gathered:

Configuring Management Stations to Communicate with SIP

- 1. On the SIP server, configure your reporting stations.**

Done through the SIP Configuration Editor, and explained in online help and in “Establishing Communication Between OpenView Products for the Reporting Modules” in *OpenView Reporter Integration with Service Information Portal* (OVR_Integration.pdf).

- 2. On the OV Reporter station, perform several configurations:**

Establish communication with other management products from which you will display SIP reports. Configure OVR to generate the appropriate reports. Configure the integration between SIP and the OVR station. Perform the customer model synchronization steps. All of these tasks are explained in “Establishing Communication Between OpenView Products for the Reporting Modules” in the manual *OVReporter Integration with Service Information Portal* (OVR_Integration.pdf).

NOTE

The finished manual did not ship with SIP 3.0. You can download the manual via the HP documentation site at:
<http://www.docs.hp.com>.

Establishing a Connection with OVSD

Several tasks are required to establish communication between SIP and HP OpenView Service Desk (OVSD):

- 1. On the SIP server, configure communication between SIP and Service Pages by defining OVSD servers, user names, and passwords on a role-by-role basis.**

Done through the SIP Configuration Editor, and explained in the online help and in the manual *OVSD Integration with Service Information Portal* (OVSD_Integration.pdf).

- 2. On each Service Desk Application Server, create a user account (Service Pages account) for each user that will access SIP Service Desk modules.**

Refer to the manual *OVSD Integration with Service Information Portal* (OVSD_Integration.pdf).

Establishing a Connection with OVPI

Several tasks are required to establish communication between SIP and HP OpenView Performance Insight (OVPI):

- 1. On the SIP server, configure communication between SIP and Performance Insight Web Access Servers by defining OVPI servers, user names, and passwords on a role-by-role basis.**

Done through the SIP Configuration Editor, and explained in the online help and in the manual *OVPI Integration with Service Information Portal* (OVPI_Integration.pdf).

- 2. On each Performance Insight Web Access Server, configure a login and password for each user that will access the SIP Performance modules, and configure a Performance Insight view for each.**

Refer to the manual *OVPI Integration with Service Information Portal* (OVPI_Integration.pdf).

5 **Configuring Users and Roles**

Understanding the User Role Configuration Tasks

The Service Information Portal uses an authorization model called the User Role model. By associating users with roles and defining for each role what you want the user to be able to see and do, you achieve portal security.

Users and roles are defined through a graphical user interface called the SIP Configuration Editor, the same one used to establish connections between SIP and your management software. You are encouraged to use this editor as your primary mechanism for configuring the User Role model. However, you will find that a few of the more advanced features are only configurable through direct editing of the user role XML files. Table 5-1 on page 75 lists all user role tasks and by which method they can be configured.

This chapter explains the User Role model and how to configure it through the SIP Configuration Editor and the XML files.

Table 5-1 Required and Optional User Role Tasks and Recommended Configuration Methods

Task	Required or Optional	Configuration Editor	XML Files
Create/modify a user role package	Required	X	
Create/modify roles	Required	X	
Create/modify users	Required	X	
Define/modify management data filters	Required	X	
Create/configure the special portal administrator role (Note: One is provided by default.**)	Required		X
Use wildcards to assign multiple roles to a user	Optional	X	
Change the name of a user role package file	Optional		X
Designate a default user	Optional		X
Designate a default role	Optional		X
Override a role's editing permissions and display name	Optional	X	
Assign a default management data filter to a user role package	Optional	X	

****SIP 2.0 Users Only:** If you installed a newer version of SIP over a SIP 2.0 installation, you do not have the new `default.xml` and `samples.xml` user role package files that provide definitions of the special SIP Administrator Role and the default user. However, they are available to you if you want to copy them over your existing files or merge in the changes manually. The new files are in the following location:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\newconfig\conf\share\roles\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/newconfig/conf/share/roles/

Understanding the User Role Model

All valid portal users must be associated with at least one role. A **role** defines what a user can see and do through the portal at a particular point in time. Users that are associated with multiple roles can easily switch between them through a drop-down list in their portal.

SIP provides two types of roles: a basic role and a special portal administrator role.

Understanding Basic Roles

A basic role consists of four parts, three of which are required:

- **A portal view** (required)
A portal view is what is displayed to a user. It is a configured set of modules and how they appear on tabs. It is also a configured set of portal view attributes, such as name in the button bar, portal skin, refresh rate, default tab, portal header, and portal footer, and so forth.
- **An editing permissions level** (required)
Editing permission levels define the interactive editing operations that a user can perform through the portal interface. Each level of editing permissions includes all the operations defined by the previous level and some additional operations. The three levels are: `ReadOnly`, `UserPreferences`, and `ViewAdmin`. See “Defining a Role” on page 90 for details. For information on full administrator privileges, see “A flag that designates the role as a special SIP administrator role” on page 77 and “Creating/Configuring a Special Portal Administrator Role” on page 103.
- **A management data filter** (required)
Management data refers to information about resources, such as services, nodes, interfaces, servers, etc., that you want to display through the portal.

In SIP, you must filter management data at the role level, explicitly associating a filter definition with each role. Filtering on a role-by-role basis provides data security, giving you a way to ensure that only relevant data gets displayed to a given user.

You have three basic alternatives for filtering management data:

- Use the `AllData` filter to allow users of the associated role to see all data from your management stations.
- Use the `NoData` filter to allow users of the associated role to see no data from your management stations.
- Use a management data filter that specifies one or more organizations in the SIP customer model. The SIP customer model is a mapping of organizations to their resources (nodes, interfaces, and services). Only the management data associated with a specified organization is displayed, thus, segmentation of customer data can be accomplished with this third filtering alternative.

For more information on creating a customer model, see Chapter 8, “Segmenting Data by Customer Organization,” on page 213.

NOTE

If you have not yet created a customer model and plan to do so later, you can use a default filter, such as “AllData” and change it later.

- **An extensible list of role properties** (optional)
Role properties can be used to do the following types of things:
 - Display customer-segmented data from a management product that has its own customer model that is independent of the SIP customer model. (See “Understanding Management Data Filtering and Customer Data Segmentation” on page 82.)
 - Implement a single sign-on solution for logging in to back-end management applications. It can be used by modules, including the generic module. (See “Giving Your Module Access to SIP Data Through Variable Substitution” on page 177.)

Understanding Special SIP Administrator Roles

A special portal administrator role consists of only one part:

- **A flag that designates the role as a special SIP administrator role**

Understanding the User Role Model

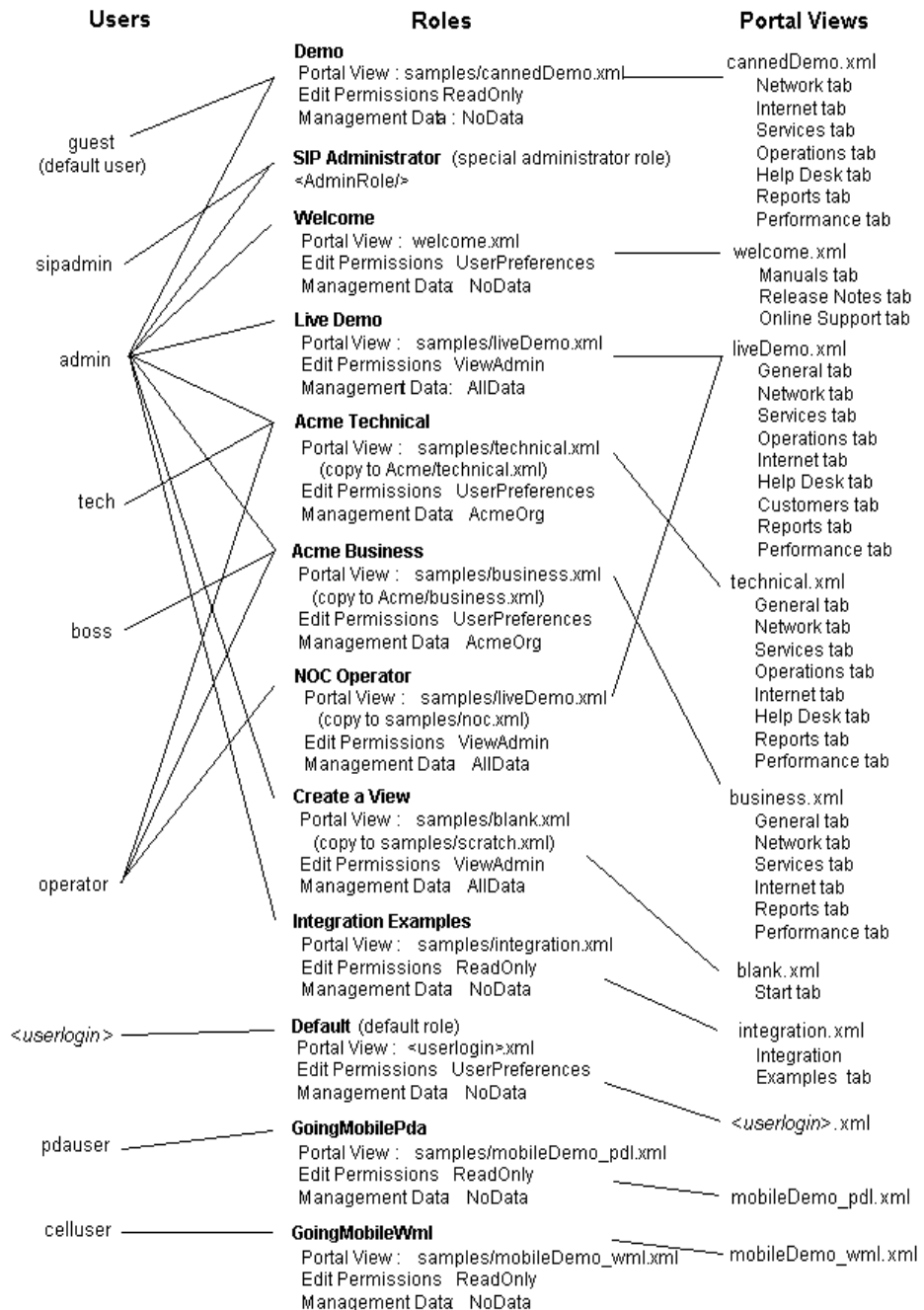
- If a role is flagged as “AdminRole”, users of this role have access to the SIP Administration Pages from which the following tasks can be performed:
 - Set portal logging and tracing
 - Control the servlet engine
 - View Customer Model reports
 - Configure Customer Model refresh rates
 - Register Customer Model Sources
 - Export the Customer Model
 - Quickly log in as a different user
 - Configure messages displayed through the Message Board
 - Configure shared bookmarks
- Upon installation, SIP is configured with “sipadmin” and “admin” users. These users are associated with the SIP Administrator role, which has been designated as a special SIP administrator role. You can modify this role only through direct editing of the XML files. (See “Creating/Configuring a Special Portal Administrator Role” on page 103.)

Understanding the Supplied Users, Roles, and Views

SIP comes with several defined users, roles, and portal views. You can use these in two ways: to understand how the User Role model works, and as templates for developing your own users, roles, and views.

Figure 5-1 shows the sample users, roles, and views supplied with SIP. Each supplied user is associated with one or more roles; and each role is associated with one and only one portal view, management data filter, and edit permissions level.

Figure 5-1 Sample User/Role/View Configurations Supplied With SIP



Understanding the Three Authorization Models

SIP supports three authorization models that can be enabled or disabled and used simultaneously. The three models represent a trade-off between flexibility and configuration effort.

1. Explicit user entry

The user login corresponds to an explicit user entry in the User Role model. Upon login, the user gets the initial role defined in the User entry.

This model provides the most flexibility in defining specifically what each user can see and do. This model is configured through the SIP Configuration Editor, and of the three models requires the most configuration effort. With this approach you must explicitly enter each user name into the User Role model.

2. Default role

If there is no explicit user entry for the user login but there is a portal view file named `<login>.xml` and there is a role in the User Role model that is designated as the default role, upon login, the user gets the default role with the portal view file named for the login.

You can disable this mechanism by not designating a default role. This model is configured only through the XML files. See “Designating a Default Role” on page 104.

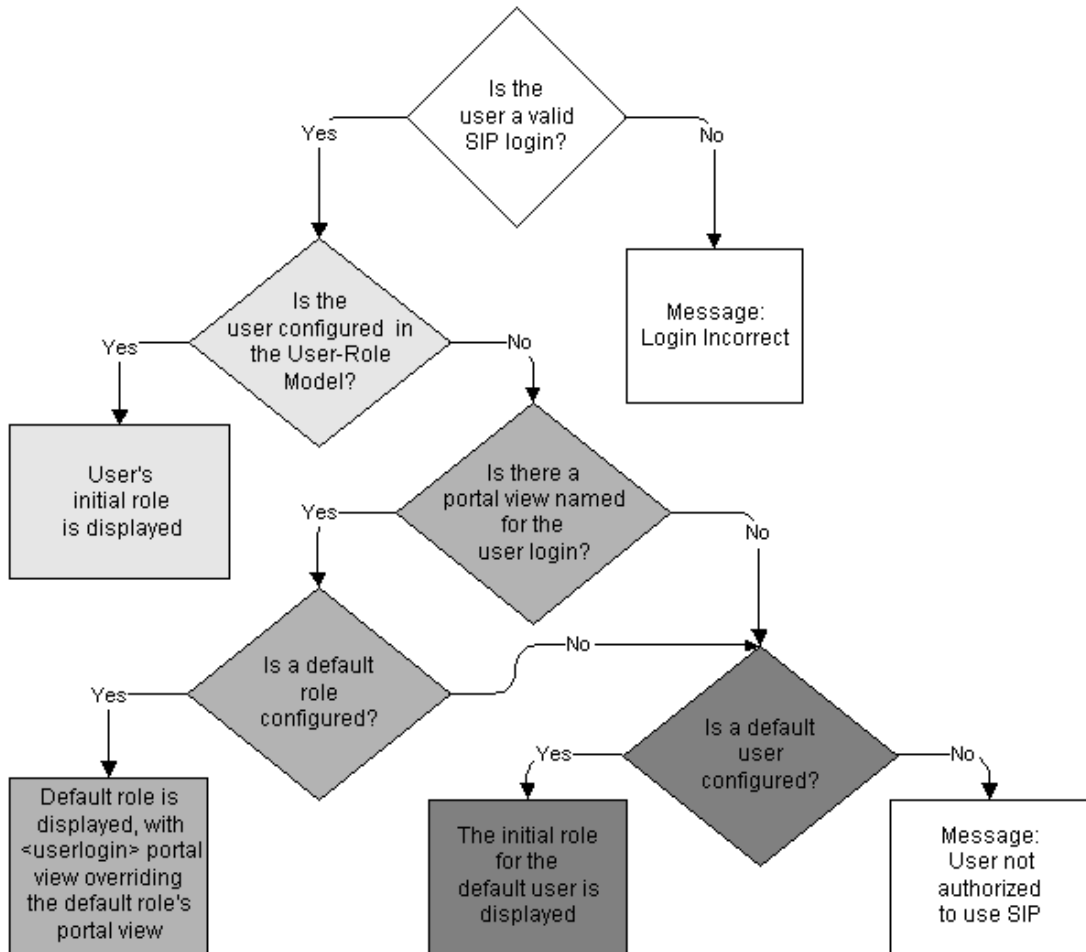
3. Default user

If neither of the two preceding mechanisms allow the user to be authorized, and if there is a user in the User Role model that is designated as the default user, upon log in the user gets the rights of the default user. The user is logged in with the initial role of the default user and can switch to any of the roles assigned to the default user. See “Designating a Default User” on page 104.




You can disable this mechanism by not having a default user. Default user is configured only through the XML files.

Figure 5-2 is an authorization flow chart that depicts the validity checks that occur when a user logs into SIP. Note that authorization is checked in the order described above: explicit user entry, default role, and default user.

Figure 5-2 Authorization Flow Chart



Authorization Models

-  Explicit User Model
-  Default Role Model
-  Default User Model

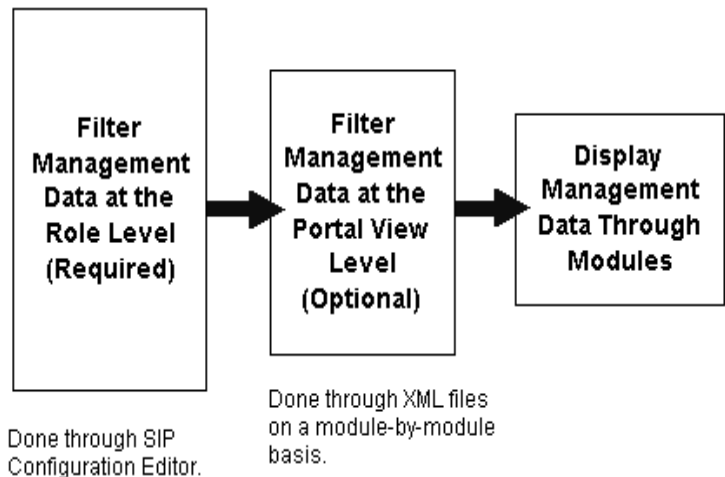
Understanding Management Data Filtering and Customer Data Segmentation

Management data refers to information about resources such as services, nodes, interfaces, servers, non-NNM-discovered objects such as containers, and so forth, that you want to display through the portal.

In SIP, you are required to filter management data at the role level. This involves explicitly associating a filter definition with each role. The filter defines what data should be displayed when a user is acting in the given role. Filtering on a role-by-role basis provides data security, giving you a way to ensure that only relevant data gets displayed to a given user.

A second level of management data filtering is allowed by some of the modules. This type of filtering is optional and allows you to refine the data on a module-by-module basis. To set up filtering at this level, see the SIP manuals that document the integration of individual management products.

Figure 5-3 **Filtering of Management Data**



Four Choices for Filtering Management Data by Role

- Display management data that is associated with one or more customer organizations in the SIP customer model.
- Display management data from an external customer model that is maintained by a management product.

- Display all management data from the connected management stations.
- Display no management data at all.

To display all or no data, use the SIP Configuration Editor to associate the role with a predefined management data filter: AllData or NoData.

NOTE

For more information on understanding the segmentation of customer data, see “Understanding Customer-to-Resource Mappings” on page 214.

Understanding the SIP Customer Model

Segmenting data by customer organization requires the use of a customer model: a mapping of customer organizations to their resources. Using the SIP customer model, several SIP modules can display management data that is segmented by customers.

The SIP customer model is constructed from multiple registered sources that are either XML files or programs that generate XML. The XML must be based on the SIP Simple Customer Model (SCM), which maps *organizations to nodes, interfaces, topomap objects* (non-NNM-discovered nodes, such as containers) and *services*, and is defined in an XML DTD.

Figure 5-4 is an example of an organization-to-resource mapping defined in a customer model source.

Figure 5-4 **Organization-to-Resource Mapping in the SIP Customer Model**

```
<SimpleCustomerModel>
  <Organization name="Acme" type="customer">
    <ServiceLevel>Gold Service</ServiceLevel>
    <NodeList>
      <Node name="host.acme.com"/>
      <Node name="server.acme.com"/>
    </NodeList>
    <InterfaceList>
      <Interface name="15.40.10.2" type="ov-ipv4"/>
      <Interface name="35.10.10.2" type="ov-ipv4"/>
    </InterfaceList>
    <ServiceList>
      <Service name="email" type="email">
```

Understanding the User Role Model

```
<DisplayString>Email</DisplayString>
<Depth>2</Depth>
</Service>
<Service name="geo_orga" type="business"/>
<Service name="cluster" type="server"/>
</ServiceList>
<TopomapObjectList>
  <TopomapObject type="Selection Name" name="LocationA"/>
  <TopomapObject type="Selection Name" name="LocationB"/>
  <TopomapObject type="Selection Name" name="LocationC"/>
  <TopomapObject type="Selection Name" name="LocationD"/>
</TopomapObjectList>

</Organization>
</SimpleCustomerModel>
```

NOTE

A word about services: The list of named services does not contain the definition of the services but provides a way to refer to particular services that are defined elsewhere.

For more information on understanding the SIP customer model, see “Using the SIP Customer Model” on page 215.

Understanding External Customer Models

Other products, such as OV Service Desk, OV Performance Insight, and OVIS, have their own customer models. SIP takes advantage of these through special properties that can be defined for a role.

For more information on understanding external customer models, see “Using an External Customer Model” on page 215.

Process of Using the SIP Customer Model and External Customer Models

Table 5-2 summarizes the two alternatives for segmenting customer data.

Table 5-2 Summary of Alternatives for Segmenting Customer Data

Using the SIP Customer Model	Using an External Customer Model
<p>Create customer model sources that adhere to the SIP customer model: the mapping of <i>organizations to nodes, interfaces, non-NNM-discovered objects</i> (for topology maps) and <i>services</i>. Tools are provided to help you create customer model sources. Where available, they are explained in the SIP manuals that document the integration of individual management products.</p> <p>After you create your customer model sources, register them with SIP. This is done through the SIP Administration Pages accessed through the SIP Administrator role.</p> <p>(For detailed information on creating and registering customer model sources for any of the supplied OpenView modules, see the SIP manuals that document the integration of individual management products.)</p> <p>Once the customer model sources are registered, use the SIP Configuration Editor to create management data filters that define the organizations to filter on. Finally, associate the filters with roles. See “Defining/Modifying Management Data Filters” on page 88.</p>	<p>Because you are using an existing customer model defined in the management product, you do not need to create a customer model. You need only assign special properties to a role in order to specify a customer organization and its resources.</p> <p>To use an external customer model, use the SIP Configuration Editor to associate a role with the relevant organization and resources. This is done by defining Role Properties that reference a management product’s existing customer model. To learn how to create valid role properties, read the SIP manuals that document the integration of these management products.</p>

Configuring Users and Roles Through the Configuration Editor

The SIP Configuration Editor is a graphical user interface for configuring the User Role model. For features that are configurable only through direct editing of the user role XML files, see “Configuring Advanced Features of the User Role Model Through XML” on page 100.

In addition to giving you a way to create and modify users, roles, and management data filters, the SIP Configuration Editor provides a way to group them by customer organization. This type of grouping is called a **user role package**. Each user role package contains a set of users and roles. Combined, the packages define all the users and roles that make up the User Role model. You can define all users and roles in a single user role package, or you can partition them into multiple packages (for example, one for each customer organization).

Because all defined users, roles, and management data filters comprise a master list, each must have a unique name across all user role packages.

NOTE

SIP 2.0 Users Only: You cannot use the SIP Configuration Editor to modify roles that contain management data filter definitions. The definitions are still valid, but if you want to use the SIP Configuration Editor to modify these roles, you need to modify the XML files. For more information, see “Troubleshooting” on page 107.

Starting the SIP Configuration Editor

- *Windows 2000:* Start:Programs->HP OpenView->Service Information Portal->Configuration Editor
(or from a command prompt type: SIPConfig)
- *UNIX:* /opt/OV/SIP/bin/SIPConfig

Creating/Modifying User Role Packages

1. In the SIP Configuration Editor:

- Select `Edit:New->User Role Package`.
 - Or, select an existing user role package and choose `Edit:Properties`.
2. In the User Role Package dialog box, note that the Package Name is automatically assigned. This value becomes the name of the user role package file. SIP and the Configuration Editor support only ASCII file names. If you prefer a different name, see “Changing the Name of the User Role Package File” on page 105.
 3. In the Package Title field, type a name that will help you distinguish this package from others.
 4. If you have already defined management data filters and want to assign one as the default for this package, click `Assign Default Management Data` and select from the compiled list of all filters created under the various user role packages.

NOTE

Management data filters must be defined through `Edit:New->Management Data` BEFORE they can be assigned as a default management data filter. After you define the management data filter, you can return to the user role package definition and select it.

5. Return to the main SIP Configuration Editor window by clicking [OK].
6. Save your configuration changes by clicking [Save].

NOTE

When you save your configuration changes by clicking [Save] on the main SIP Configuration Editor window, you will receive a message titled “Results of the Save Operation.” This message will indicate whether warnings and errors occurred and whether the user role database was updated.

Assigning a Default Management Data Filter to a User Role Package

For convenience while setting up roles, you can assign a default management data filter for a specific user role package and it can be used by some or all of the roles, instead of selecting a specific management data filter for each role in the package.

1. In the SIP Configuration Editor:
 - Select: Edit:New->User Role Package
 - Or highlight an existing user role package and select: Edit:Properties.
2. In the User Role Package dialog box, click Assign Default Management Data and select from the compiled list of all filters created under the various user role packages.

NOTE

Management data filters must be defined through Edit:New->Management Data BEFORE they can be assigned as a default management data filter. After you define the management data filter, you can return to the user role package definition and select it.

3. Return to the main SIP Configuration Editor window by clicking [OK].
4. Save your configuration changes by clicking [Save].

Defining/Modifying Management Data Filters

1. In the SIP Configuration Editor:
 - Select the user role package (or the Management Data folder) to which you want to add a new management data filter, and choose: Edit:New->Management Data.
 - Or, select an existing management data filter and then choose: Edit:Properties.
2. In the Name field, type a name that is unique among all defined management data filters.

NOTE

The management data filter name is an internal ID used for referencing the filter. If you try to use an existing filter name, when you click [Save] from the main SIP Configuration Editor window, you will get an error.

3. In the Data Presentation box, define the filter.

- Select Show All Data if:
 - You want to see data through the portal but you have not yet set up a customer model (as described in Chapter 8, “Segmenting Data by Customer Organization,” on page 213).
 - You do not want to segment data by customer organization.
- Select Show No Data if:
 - You do not want to display real data through the portal, such as when you are displaying demonstration modules and data.
- Select Show Data for the Following Organizations if you have a working customer model that contains the organizations that you want to filter on.
 - a. Click the [Add] button. A list of all organizations in the customer model is displayed. This list is derived from the customer model sources registered with the SIP customer model through the SIP Administration Pages (accessed through an Administrator role).
 - b. Select the organizations to filter on, and click [OK].

NOTE

If the organization name is not in the Available Organizations list, you can: (1) Cancel the Select Organizations dialog box and click Show All Data or Show No Data. This way you can later add the organization to the customer model (a good solution if you are early in the development of customized portals). (2) Quit defining a management data filter until you have a working customer model that contains a mapping for the organization.

NOTE

If you add new organizations to the SIP customer model while the SIP Configuration Editor is running, you need to restart the SIP Configuration Editor before the new organizations are recognized by it.

4. Return to the main SIP Configuration Editor window by clicking [OK].
5. Save your configuration changes by clicking [Save].

NOTE

For information on how to overriding a role's editing permissions and display name, see the next section "Overriding a Role's Editing Permissions and Display Name" on page 98.

Creating/Modifying Roles

- In the SIP Configuration Editor:
 - Select the user role package folder (or the Roles folder) to which you want to add a new role, and choose `Edit:New->Role`.
 - Or, select a role and choose `Edit:Properties`.

NOTE

The New Role dialog box has three tabs: General, Management Data, and Properties. Note that configuration changes are saved only when you click the [Save] button from the main SIP Configuration Editor window, not when you click the [OK] button at the bottom of the dialog box.

Defining a Role

1. Select the General tab.
2. In the Role Name field, type a name that is unique across all user role packages.

NOTE

The `Role Name` is an internal ID used for referencing the role. If you try to use an existing role name, when you click [Save] from the main `SIP Configuration Editor` window, you will get an error.

3. In the `Display Name` field, type the name that will appear in the portal button bar and for the user who is acting in this role.

4. For `Edit Permissions`, choose from the drop-down list box:

A role must have an edit permissions level associated with it. Whereas a portal view defines what someone in a role is allowed to *see* through the portal, edit permissions defines what they are allowed to *do* through the portal—what level of editing they are allowed to perform.

- `ReadOnly` - A user with `ReadOnly` edit permissions can make no persistent editing changes. This user can make changes that have session scope, such as last tab and rollup/rolldown per module instance. This user will not see the [Options] button on the main portal page.
- `UserPreferences` - A user with `UserPreferences` edit permissions can edit the following portal attributes:
 - `Display Name` (in the portal button bar)
 - `Skin` (color Scheme and fonts)

These changes have effect only for the user. Other users of the role will see either their own user preferences or the defaults defined in the portal view file. User preferences are saved in the file `conf/share/users/login.xml`.

Note that because changes to display name and skin through the GUI are modified as user preferences, the default display name and skin in the portal view file can only be changed by directly editing the portal view XML file.

- `ViewAdmin` - A user with `ViewAdmin` edit permissions can perform all the operations defined for the `UserPreferences` level, as well as edit the following portal attributes:
 - `Refresh rate`
 - `Show Display Name`

Configuring Users and Roles Through the Configuration Editor

- Show Date/Time
 - Change Default tab
 - Add, delete, rename, reorder tabs
 - Add, delete, and reorder modules on a tab
 - Customize individual modules
5. In the Portal View field, browse to an existing portal view, choose one, and click Select View XML File. You may also type the name of an existing view file, but the views file must be relative to the conf/share/views directory and located within the hierarchy of that directory.

NOTE

A **portal view** is a set of tabs and the configured modules that appear to a user. It also includes a set of general attributes associated with the way the portal looks to the user, such as the header, banner, “skin” (color scheme and fonts), and so forth.

Several sample portal views are supplied and can be used as templates. These are stored in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\views\samples
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/views/samples

To create your own custom portal views, see Chapter 6, “Customizing Portal Views,” on page 109.

-
6. If you want to protect the existing portal view file (specified in the Portal View field) from any changes made by a user, in the Modified View File field enter a file name (and directory) to which a copy of the portal view file will be saved if modification are made.

For example:

Windows 2000: acme\technical.xml
UNIX: acme/technical.xml

NOTE

Modified View File is an optional field for enabling multiple roles to initially share an existing portal view file. If a user makes changes to the portal view through the SIP interface, a new copy of the portal view (including the directory, if specified) will be created for the role

the user is currently in.

It is important to realize that you can specify only one Modified View File per role, and if you assign the same role to multiple users, they may overwrite each other's changes.

7. If you are finished configuring the role, return to the main SIP Configuration Editor window by clicking [OK], and then save your configuration changes by clicking [Save].
8. If you haven't yet assigned a management data filter, go to the Management Data tab explained in the next section.

Assigning a Management Data Filter to a Role

Before you can assign a management data filter to a role, you must define it through Edit:New->Management Data, as described in "Defining/Modifying Management Data Filters" on page 88. If you haven't yet done so, you can use one of two default management data filters supplied with SIP: AllData and NoData.

A management data filter is required for each role. Even if you are accessing data from products such as OV Internet Services (OVIS) and OV Service Desk (OVSD), which map customers to organizations through Role Properties and do not use the management data filter ("Assigning Special Properties to a Role" on page 95), you still must assign a management data filter.

1. Select the Management Data tab.
2. When assigning a management data filter to a role, you have two choices:
 - Use Default Management Data for the Package
 - Before you can assign default management data to a role, you must (1) define a management data filter (through Edit:New->Management Data), and (2) assign it as the default management data filter for the user role package (through Edit:Properties->User Role Package).
 - Use Specific Management Data
 - If you have already defined a management data filter, select it from the drop-down list in the Data field.

Configuring Users and Roles Through the Configuration Editor

- If you have not yet defined management data filters (through `Edit:New->Management Data`), or if you do not intend to segment your management data based on customers, complete your role configuration by selecting `AllData` or `NoData` (explained in Table 5-3) from the drop-down list in the `Data` field. Later, if you create the customer model and management data filters, you can return to this tab and select a specific management data filter.

Table 5-3 When to Select `AllData` and `NoData`

Use <code>AllData</code> If:	Use <code>NoData</code> If:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • You want to see data through the portal but you are not yet ready to set up a customer model and management data filter for the role. • You do not want to segment data by customer organization for the role • You have not yet created a SIP customer model but plan to later. • You have created a SIP customer model but the organization name is not listed in the <code>Data</code> field (meaning that the management data filter for this customer organization has not been created). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • You do not want to display real data through the portal, such as when you are displaying canned demonstration modules and data. (In the <code>Default Users and Roles Package</code>, you will find that the <code>Demo</code> role displays <code>NoData</code>.) • For the role, you plan to display data only (1) from products that have their own customer model (<code>OVIS</code> and <code>OVSD</code>), or (2) through modules that do not display filtered customer data, such as <code>Message Board</code> and <code>Bookmarks</code> modules, and many of the <code>Generic-based</code> module integrations.

3. When you are finished configuring the role, return to the main `SIP Configuration Editor` window by clicking `[OK]`, and then save your configuration changes by clicking `[Save]`.
4. If you want to define role properties, go to the `Properties` tab explained in the next section.

Assigning Special Properties to a Role

If a management product has its own customer model, you may still be able to segment customer data through the use of Role Properties. Products such as OpenView Service Desk, OpenView Internet Services, and OpenView Performance Insight have their own customer models that SIP can take advantage of.

Another way to use Role Properties is when you are developing Generic-based modules. You can extend the module in a way that allows the module to retrieve user-specific information from SIP. In this way, your application can get data about a user's current role, edit permissions, organizations defined by the management data filter, and properties. This is done through a predefined variable: \$OVROLE. For more information on using Role Properties this way, see "Giving Your Module Access to SIP Data Through Variable Substitution" on page 177.

To Define Role Properties

1. Click on the Properties tab.
2. Enter both a Name and Value that are understood by the management product from which segmented data is to be gathered. To ensure that you are entering valid properties, you must follow the instructions in:
 - *OVIS Integration with SIP* (OVIS_Integration.pdf)
 - *OV Service Desk Integration with SIP* (OVSD_Integration.pdf)
 - *OV Performance Insight Integration with SIP* (OVPI_Integration.pdf)
3. Click [Add].
4. When you are finished configuring the role, return to the main SIP Configuration Editor window by clicking [OK].
5. Save your configuration changes by clicking [Save].

To Modify Role Properties

1. Click on the Properties tab.
2. In the Defined Role Properties table, double-click in the cell you want to modify.
3. Type the changes.

Configuring Users and Roles Through the Configuration Editor

4. When you are finished configuring the role, return to the main SIP Configuration Editor window by clicking [OK].
5. Save your configuration changes by clicking [Save].

To Remove Role Properties

1. Click on the Properties tab.
2. If you want to remove properties from this role, select a row in the Defined Role Properties box and click [Remove]. Multiple properties can be selected simultaneously using CTRL+Click and SHIFT+Click.
3. Multiple role properties can be selected in the table and removed simultaneously using CTRL+Click and SHIFT+Click.
4. When you are finished configuring the role, return to the main SIP Configuration Editor window by clicking [OK].
5. Save your configuration changes by clicking [Save].

Creating/Modifying Users

- In the SIP Configuration Editor:
 - Select the user role package folder (or the Users folder) to which you want to add a new user, and choose Edit:New->User.
 - Or, select a user and choose Edit:Properties.

NOTE

The New User dialog box has two tabs: General and Roles. Note that configuration changes are saved only when you click the [Save] button from the main SIP Configuration Editor window, not when you click the [OK] button at the bottom of the dialog box.

Defining a User

1. Click on the General tab.
2. In the User Login Name field, type a name that is unique across all user role packages. User names must be valid SIP login names registered with the authentication provider.

NOTE

User Login Name is an internal ID used for referencing a user. If you try to use an existing user login name, when you click [Save] from the main SIP Configuration Editor window, you will get an error.

3. In the Display Name field, type the name that will appear to the user in the portal button bar.

Assigning Roles to a User

After you have defined roles, you can assign to your users the roles you want them to have. Users can have multiple roles between which they can switch while using the portal. Users must be associated with at least one role: the initial role.

1. Click on the Roles tab.
2. From the drop-down list in the Initial Role field a list of all defined roles is displayed. Select a role that the user will be in when he or she first logs in to the portal.
3. To assign more than one role to this user, click [Add]. A list of all defined roles (in all user role packages) is displayed.

In the Select Role dialog box, you can sort the list of roles by any column by double-clicking on the column heading.

4. Select a role. Multiple roles can be selected simultaneously using CTRL+Click and SHIFT+Click. Once you have the desired roles selected, click [OK].
5. When finished, click [OK] to return to the main SIP Configuration Editor window.
6. Save your configuration changes by clicking [Save].

Assigning a Set of Roles to a User Using Wildcards

If you have several roles that begin with the same name, for example, Acme, you can use wildcards to assign all Acme roles to a user.

1. On the Roles tab, first add a row to the Other Roles table by clicking [Add], choosing any of the roles, and clicking [OK].

Configuring Users and Roles Through the Configuration Editor

2. In the Name field, delete the existing name, and type the name and wildcard that defines a set of roles to reference. For example, to select all roles that begin with Acme (such as AcmeTechnical and AcmeBusiness, type Acme.*.
3. To prepend a name to each role, for example, Acme Organization, in the Override Display Name field type Acme Organization followed by a space. The name of the role as it appears in the role drop-down list on the portal button bar will be prepended with “Acme Organization”. For example, “Acme Organization Technical.”
4. When you are finished configuring the user roles, return to the main SIP Configuration Editor window by clicking [OK].
5. Save your configuration changes by clicking [Save].

Overriding a Role’s Editing Permissions and Display Name

You can allow a user to switch to another user role and be granted a different permission level than the default for the role. You can do this for any user, but it is recommended that you set a higher level only for administrative users.

1. In the SIP Configuration Editor, select a user and select: Edit:Properties.
2. Click on the Roles tab.
3. If the role is not yet assigned to this user, in the Other Roles segment of the dialog box, click [Add].
4. A list of all roles with current display names and permission levels appears. Select one or more and click [OK].
5. On the Roles tab, find the role for which permissions will be overridden, and click in the Override Permissions column. From the drop-down list, select a different level of permissions than the default.
6. You can also override the Display Name of the role. The Display Name appears in the portal button bar to the current user acting in this role. On the Roles tab, for a given role double-click the Override Display Name cell. Type the new name.
7. When you are finished configuring the override, return to the main SIP Configuration Editor window by clicking [OK].
8. Save your configuration changes by clicking [Save].

Verifying that a Portal Works as Expected

After you have configured the users and roles, you can start SIP and switch among roles to verify that each is configured correctly.

1. Log into SIP as “admin” or “sipadmin” or some other administrative user.
2. Switch to the SIP Administrator role. (If an administrator role does not appear on the list of roles, you may need to log in as a different administrative user.)
3. Click on the Switch Users tab.
4. Click on the user name in the list box and select [Become User].
5. Examine the portal to verify that it looks and works as expected.
6. To switch back to the original user, click the [Logout] button.

Configuring Advanced Features of the User Role Model Through XML

Several user role configuration tasks can only be done through the XML files:

- Configuring a special portal administrator role
- Designating a default user
- Designating a default role
- Changing the name of the user role package file

Procedures for these tasks are explained on the following pages. For more information on the XML elements and attributes, see Appendix E, “Configuring Basic Features of the User Role Model Using XML,” on page 317.

NOTE

SIP 2.0 Users Only: If you installed SIP 3.0 over your SIP 2.0 installation you do not have the new `default.xml` and `samples.xml` user role package files that provide definitions of the special SIP Administrator Role and the default user. However, they are available to you if you want to copy them over your existing files or merge in the changes manually. The new files are in the following location:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\newconfig\conf\share\roles\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/newconfig/conf/share/roles/

Location of the XML Files

The user role files are located in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\roles\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/roles/

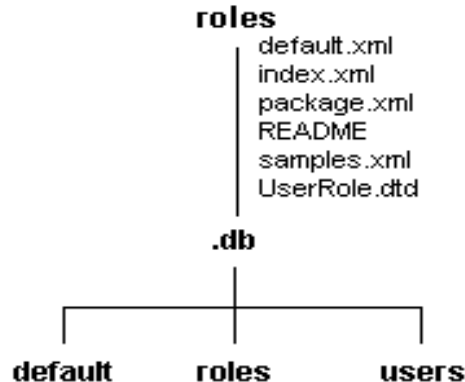
What Gets Installed With SIP

Figure 5-5 on page 101 shows the directory structure when SIP is installed. Here is an explanation of each file:

Configuring Advanced Features of the User Role Model Through XML

- `default.xml` - A package configuration file that defines a special administrator role, as well as a default user and default role used when authorizing valid SIP users who are not explicitly defined in the User Role model. It also contains the definition of `AllData` and `NoData` management data filters.
- `index.xml` - Used as an index to all package files that contain user and role information and comprise the User Role model.
- `package.xml` - A package file that you can copy and rename as a starting point when creating your own package files.
- `README` - Important notes on updating the User Role model when directly modifying the XML.
- `samples.xml` - A package configuration file that defines several sample users and roles for out-of-the-box use of SIP.
- `UserRole.dtd` - Defines the XML DTD for the user role packages. For detailed information about the elements and attributes of `UserRole.dtd`, see “User Role Model Elements and Attributes” on page 323.

Figure 5-5 **roles directory**



Understanding the User Role XML Files

- Two types of configuration files make up the User Role model: an index file and user role package files.

Configuring Advanced Features of the User Role Model Through XML

- You can store the user role package files in any directory structure under the `roles` directory. Do not, however, put any files in the generated `.db` database directory.
- Never edit any file in the `.db` directory or its subdirectories. These files constitute the user role database and are automatically generated by the `create_role_db` command or when the [Save] operation in the SIP Configuration Editor completes without errors.
- The index file registers all of the package files that make up the User Role model. The index file defines the `UserRoleModel` element, shown in Figure E-1 on page 323 and described in Table E-3 on page 325. You can have only one index file and it must be named `/conf/share/roles/index.xml`.
- Each user role package file contains a set of users and roles. Combined, the package files define all the users and roles that make up the User Role model. You can define all users and roles in a single file or you can partition them into multiple files (for example, one for each customer organization). User role package files must be referenced in the index file.
- Before you edit the XML files, make sure the SIP Configuration Editor is closed.
- After you make changes to the user role configuration files, you must (1) run the `create_role_db` command or (2) start the SIP Configuration Editor and perform a successful [Save] operation to update the database files. For more information, see below.

Updating the User Role Model After Editing the XML Files

If you make changes to the User Role model through direct editing of the XML files, you must update the User Role database in one of two ways:

- Start the SIP Configuration Editor and perform a successful [Save] operation, or
- Run the command `create_role_db`

At run-time, the SIP portal uses the user role data from the database not from the User Role model XML files. If the User Role model contains no errors, the database is updated and the changes are immediately available to the portal.

To update the database from the command line:

1. First, make sure the SIP Configuration Editor is closed.
2. After you have updated the user role XML files, run `create_role_db`.

NOTE

For the command to work from outside the `bin` directory, you must set `JAVA_HOME` to the JDK 1.3 environment, and add the following to your `PATH` variable:

Windows 2000: `%SIP_HOME%\bin`

UNIX: `/opt/OV/SIP/bin`

3. Correct any problems that are detected, and run the command until the User Role model is satisfactory.

Creating/Configuring a Special Portal Administrator Role

You can give to a role the highest level of administrative privileges by defining the `AdminRole` element in the role. You should have at least one role designated as the SIP administrator role. For more information, see “Understanding Special SIP Administrator Roles” on page 77.

Upon installation, the special SIP administrator role is assigned to the `admin` user in the `samples.xml` package file and the `sipadmin` user in the `default.xml` user role package. You can designate more than one administrator role, but be cautious. The presence of this element grants access to the SIP Administration Pages as well as the ability to log in as any user.

Creating the special Administrator role can be done through the direct editing of XML files. You cannot create it through the SIP Configuration Editor. However, once it is created, you can use the SIP Configuration Editor to assign it to users.

The following role configuration is provided for you in the `default.xml` user role package file:

```
<!-- Special SIP Administrator Role -->
<Role name="SIPAdministrator"
      title="SIP Administrator">
  <AdminRole/>
</Role>
```

Designating a Default User

Upon installation, SIP provides a definition for a default user. The default user can be modified, but not set, through the SIP Configuration Editor. Only one default user can be defined in the User Role model. For important information on the default user feature, see “Understanding the Three Authorization Models” on page 80.

The following definition of a default user is provided in the `default.xml` user role package file.

```
<User name="guest" displayName="Guest"
      initialRole="Demo" defaultUser="yes">
  <RoleRef href="Demo"/>
</User>
```

To Set the Default User

1. To remove the default user designation from a user (for example, from the user "guest" shown above), change the `defaultUser` attribute from "yes" to "no", or remove this attribute all together.
2. To designate a different user as the default user, in the `User` element, define the `defaultUser="yes"`.
3. Save the user role package file to which changes were made, and follow “Updating the User Role Model After Editing the XML Files” on page 102.

Designating a Default Role

Upon installation, SIP provides a definition for a default role. The default role can be modified, but not set, through the SIP Configuration Editor. Only one default user can be defined in the User Role model. For more information on the default role feature, see “Understanding the Three Authorization Models” on page 80.

The following definition of a default user is provided in the `default.xml` user role package file.

Configuring Advanced Features of the User Role Model Through XML

```
<Role name="Default" title="Default" defaultRole="yes">
<!-- The portal view file "<login>.xml" may override this -->
    <PortalViewRef href="samples/cannedDemo.xml"/>
    <EditPermission level="UserPreferences"/>
    <MgmtDataRef href="NoData"/>
</Role>
```

To Set the Default Role

1. To remove the default role designation from a role (for example, from the role "Default" shown above), change the defaultRole attribute from "yes" to "no", or remove this attribute all together.
2. To designate a different role as the default role, in the Role element, define the defaultRole="yes".
3. Save the user role package file to which changes were made, and follow “Updating the User Role Model After Editing the XML Files” on page 102.

Changing the Name of the User Role Package File

When you create a user role package in the SIP Configuration Editor, the Package Name field is automatically assigned and defines the name of the user role package file on the file system. SIP and the Configuration Editor support only ASCII file names. If you prefer to change the package file name, follow these steps:

1. In the roles directory, find and rename the user role package file:

```
Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\roles\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/roles/
```

NOTE

Package file names must contain only ASCII characters.

2. Change the package file name in the index file:

```
Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\roles\index.xml
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/roles/index.xml
```

For example:

```
<UserRolePackageRef href="<modified_package_name>.xml"/>
```

Configuring Advanced Features of the User Role Model Through XML

3. Save and close the `index.xml` file.
4. Update the User Role model by following the instructions in “Updating the User Role Model After Editing the XML Files” on page 102.

Troubleshooting

Role Contains Management Data Filter Not Editable Through SIP Configuration Editor

This problem is experienced by SIP 2.0 Users Only. A role that contains a management data definition (instead of a reference to a management data definition) cannot be edited through the SIP Configuration Editor. The definitions are still valid, but if you want to use the editor to modify these roles, you will need to use an XML editor to modify the role, removing the management data filter definition from the role and instead creating it outside the role and referencing it from the role.

Figure 5-6

Sample Management Data Definitions Defined Inside a Role

```
<Role name="AcmeBusiness" title="Business">
  <PortalViewRef href="samples/business.xml"
    copy="Acme/business.xml" />
  <EditPermission level="UserPreferences" />
  <MgmtData name="AcmeData" orgName="Acme" />
</Role>

<Role name="BestCorpManager" title="Business">
  <PortalViewRef href="samples/business.xml"
    copy="BestCorp/business.xml" />
  <EditPermission level="UserPreferences" />
  <MgmtData name="BestCorpBusiness">
    <OrganizationFilter op="OR">
      <OrganizationRef href="BestCorpFinance" />
      <OrganizationRef href="BestCorpHR" />
    </OrganizationFilter>
  </MgmtData>
</Role>
```

Figure 5-7

Sample Management Data Definitions Defined Outside the Role and Referenced from the Role

```
<Role name="AcmeBusiness" title="Business">
  <PortalViewRef href="samples/business.xml"
    copy="Acme/business.xml" />
```

Troubleshooting

```
        <EditPermission level="UserPreferences"/>
        <MgmtDataRef href="AcmeData"/>
    </Role>

    <Role name="BestCorpTechnical" title="Technical">
        <PortalViewRef href="samples/technical.xml"
            copy="BestCorp/technical.xml"/>
        <EditPermission level="UserPreferences"/>
        <MgmtDataRef href="BestCorpBusiness">
    </Role>

    <MgmtData name="AcmeData" orgName="Acme"/>

    <MgmtData name="BestCorpBusiness">
        <OrganizationFilter>
            <OrganizationRef href="BestCorpFinance"/>
            <OrganizationRef href="BestCorpHR"/>
        </OrganizationFilter>
    </MgmtData>
```

6 Customizing Portal Views

Understanding Portal Views

A portal view is the configured set of tabs and modules that appear to a user. It is also a configured set of portal view attributes, such as the name in the button bar, the portal skin, refresh rate, default tab, portal header, and portal footer, and so forth.

A portal view is that part of a role that defines what a user can see through the portal at a particular point in time.

SIP comes with several defined portal views. You can use them as templates for developing your own views. For an illustration of the supplied portal views, users, and roles, see Figure 5-1 on page 75.

The task of creating and customizing portal views means first deciding what modules, tabs, and portal view attributes should be associated with a given role, whether you can leverage the supplied portal views, and whether you want to customize the portal look and feel by using your own graphic images in the portal banner and footer. Before beginning to customize portal views, make sure you have made a plan. See Chapter 3 “Questions to Ask Yourself” on page 48 and the worksheets in Table 3-6 on page 50 and Table 3-7 on page 51.

Customization Options

The following two tables list the basic and advanced customizations that you can make to portal views.

Basic portal view customizations are made through the portal interface while you are in a role that references the portal view that you want to customize. Advanced customizations are made through the direct editing of XML, HTML, and JSP files.

Table 6-1 Basic Portal View Customizations

Customization	Configuration Method (through SIP interface)	Minimum Edit Permissions Required of the Role
Specify the User Name to Display in the Button Bar of a Portal View	[Options] button	UserPreferences
Choose the Skin (Portal Look and Feel) for a Portal View	[Options] button	UserPreferences
Choose the Refresh Rate for a Portal View	[Options] button	ViewAdmin
Choose to Show a User Name in the Button Bar of the Portal View	[Options] button	ViewAdmin
Choose to Show the Date and Time in the Button Bar of the Portal View	[Options] button	ViewAdmin
Create, Modify, Delete, and Reorder Tabs in a Portal View	[Options] button	ViewAdmin
Select the Default Tab for a Portal View	[Options] button	ViewAdmin

Table 6-1 Basic Portal View Customizations (Continued)

Customization	Configuration Method (through SIP interface)	Minimum Edit Permissions Required of the Role
Add Modules to a Portal View	[Options] or [Add] button at the bottom of each tab column	ViewAdmin
Remove Modules from a Portal View	[X] button on the module title bar. [Options] button, or [Edit] button at the bottom of each tab column	UserPreferences
Reorder Modules in a Portal View	[Options] button, or [Edit] button at the bottom of each tab column.	ViewAdmin
Add, Remove, and Reorder Submodules in a Portal View	[Edit] button on a module title bar.	ViewAdmin

Table 6-2 Advanced Portal View Configurations

Customization	Configuration Method (direct editing of XML files)
Change the Default Help Topic for a Module	Direct Editing of module registration file
Change the Default Header for all portal views	Direct Editing of OVPortalConfig.xml
Change the Default Footer for all portal views	Direct Editing of OVPortalConfig.xml
Specify a Custom Help Topic for a Specific Portal View	Direct Editing of the portal view XML file
Specify a Custom Header for a Specific Portal View	Direct Editing of the portal view XML file

Table 6-2 Advanced Portal View Configurations (Continued)

Customization	Configuration Method (direct editing of XML files)
Specify a Custom Footer for a Specific Portal View	Direct Editing of the portal view XML file
Add a Custom Skin to the Skin Selection List for all portal views	Direct Editing of <code>OVPortalConfig.xml</code>
Create a Custom Help Topic for a Module	HTML
Create a Custom Header	JSP
Create a Custom Footer	JSP
Create a Custom Skin	Cascading Style Sheets (CSS)
Configure module display filters	Direct Editing of the portal view XML file. For instructions on configuring module display filters, see the SIP manuals that explain the integrations of individual management products: “Getting Additional Documentation” on page 17.
Configure advanced module-specific settings	Direct Editing of the portal view XML file For instructions on configuring advanced module-specific settings, see the SIP manuals that explain the integrations of individual management products: “Getting Additional Documentation” on page 17.

Creating Portal Views

An efficient way to develop portal views is to leverage existing ones. Following are two ways to create a new portal view file based on one that is supplied or on one that you have created:

- From the file system:
 1. Copy and rename an existing portal view XML file (one that is supplied with SIP or already created by you). Portal view files are located in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\views\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share\views/

If you change the directory levels when copying a portal view file, you must update the DTD path in the file.

In each portal view file is a reference to the PortalView.dtd. This DTD is specified relative to the conf/share/views directory. If your portal view file is located in the conf/share/views directory, the DTD reference looks like this:

```
<!DOCTYPE PortalView SYSTEM "PortalView.dtd">
```

If you copy portal view files between the conf/share/views directory and any of its subdirectories, make sure you change the reference to the PortalView.dtd. For example, if you place a portal view file in the conf/share/views/samples directory, the reference to the DTD would be:

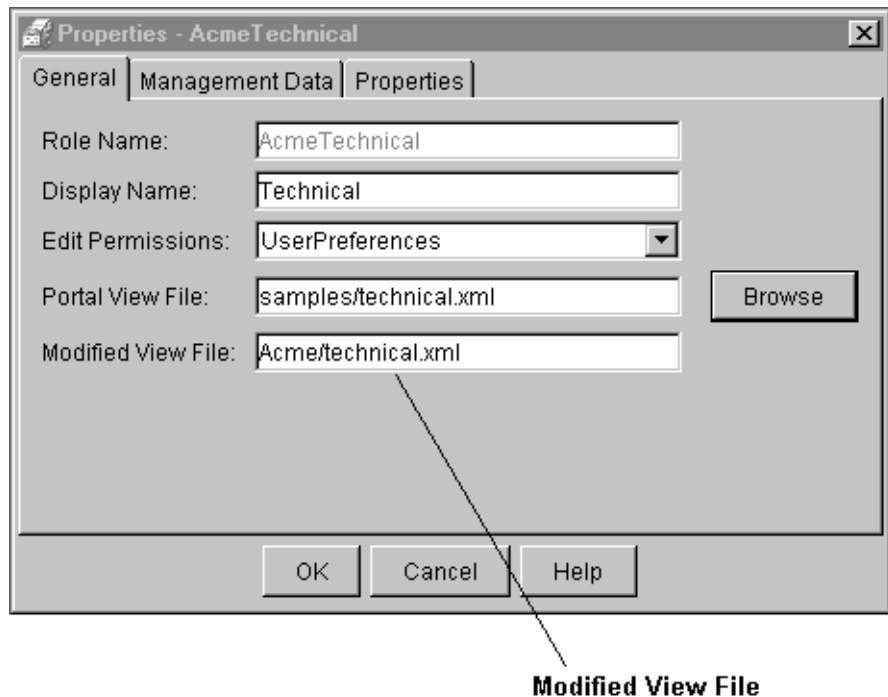
```
<!DOCTYPE PortalView SYSTEM "../PortalView.dtd">
```

2. Through the SIP Configuration Editor, create or modify a role and assign the new portal view, that you created in step 1, to the role.
- From the SIP Configuration Editor:
 - Create or modify a role and assign an existing portal view, and a modified view file, to the role. (For an example, see.) When the portal view is later customized, the original portal view is protected while a new copy is created with the modifications.

In this way, you can enable multiple roles to initially share a portal view, and when changes are made to the portal view through the SIP interface, a new copy of the view is created for the role. This protects the initial portal view file from any changes made by a user.

It is important to note that if you make changes to the original portal view, those changes are NOT made automatically in the modified view file. In addition, you can specify only one modified view file per role. If you assign the same role to multiple users, they may overwrite each other's changes.

Figure 6-1 **Sample Entry of a Modified View File**



For detailed information on creating modified view files, see "Creating/Modifying Roles" on page 90.

Logging In to SIP to Customize a Portal View

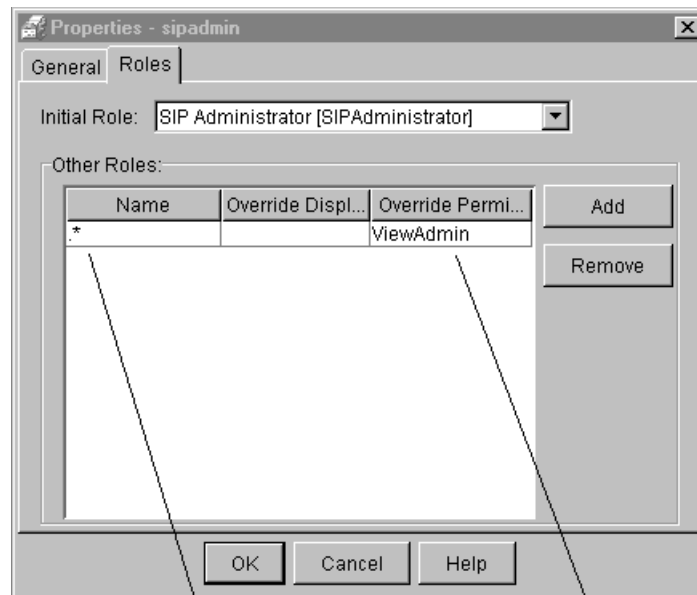
- Log in to SIP as a user who has access to the role that references the portal view you want to customize. If the user has access to multiple roles, switch to the appropriate role.

You can log in as either an end user or an administrative user who has access to the role. To edit a portal view, the role must have the appropriate level of permissions. The majority of the customizations require the role to have `ViewAdmin` edit permissions. Table 6-1 on page 111 shows the permissions level required to make each customization. For information on overriding editing permissions, see “Overriding a Role’s Editing Permissions and Display Name” on page 98.

Giving an Administrative User “ViewAdmin” Permissions to All Roles

You can give permission to an administrative user to customize any portal view by giving them access to all roles and overriding the edit permissions level.

1. In the `SIP Configuration Editor`, select a user and choose `Edit:Properties`.
2. Click on the `Roles` tab.
3. In the `Other Roles` segment of the dialog box, click `[Add]`.
4. To add a blank row to the list in the `Other Roles` list, choose any role on the list, and click `[OK]`. It doesn’t matter which role you select because you will change the values.
5. On the `Roles` tab, change the role `Name` to the wildcard `".*"` as shown on the next page.



wildcard value of " .* " matches all roles

Edit permissions override value of "ViewAdmin" gives sipadmin user that level of permissions for all roles

6. In the Override Permissions column, from the drop-down list select ViewAdmin.
7. Return to the main SIP Configuration Editor window by clicking [OK].
8. Save your configuration changes by clicking [Save].

Customizing General Portal View Attributes

The following portal view attributes can be configured in order to personalize a portal view:

- User name that appears in the button bar
- The portal skin (portal look and feel)
- Portal refresh rate
- A switch to allow for the display of the user name in the button bar
- A switch to allow for the display of the date and time in the button bar.

Specifying the User Name to Display in the Button Bar of a Portal View

The role you are in must have a minimum edit permissions level of `UserPreferences` in order to change the name that appears in the button bar.

1. In the main portal page, click [Options] on the portal button bar.
2. In the `User Options` segment, type the name that you want to display in the portal button bar.
3. Save and return to the main portal page by clicking [OK].

Choosing the Skin for a Portal View

The role you are in must have a minimum edit permissions level of `UserPreferences` in order to change the portal skin.

1. In the main portal page, click [Options] on the portal button bar.
2. Go to the `User Options` segment of the page.
3. From the `Skins` drop-down list box, select a skin that provides the look and feel you want the portal to have. Try the available skins to find one that you like.
4. Save and return to the main portal page by clicking [OK].

Choosing the Refresh Rate for a Portal View

Refresh rate refers to the frequency (by default, in minutes, hours, or one day) at which the data on the portal page is regenerated to reflect the most current state of the data. Be aware that frequent refreshes can decrease portal performance.

The role you are in must have a minimum edit permissions level of `ViewAdmin` in order to change the refresh rate.

1. In the main portal page, click [Options] on the portal button bar.
2. Go to the Portal Options segment of the page.
3. From the Skins drop-down list box, select a skin that provides the look and feel you want the portal to have. Try the available skins to find one that you like.
4. Save and return to the main portal page by clicking [OK].

Choosing to Show a User Name in the Button Bar

The role you are in must have a minimum edit permissions level of `ViewAdmin` in order to choose whether or not to show a user name in the portal button bar.

Choosing to Show the Date and Time in the Button Bar

The role you are in must have a minimum edit permissions level of `ViewAdmin` in order to choose whether or not to show the date and time in the portal button bar.

Customizing Tabs and Modules in a Portal View

This section describes how to create and customize tabs and modules for a portal view.

Configuring Tabs

You can create any number of tabs and customize them in a variety of ways, all depending upon how you want to present information through a portal view.

The role you are in must have a minimum edit permissions level of ViewAdmin in order to configure the portal view tabs.

1. Log in to SIP as a user who has access to the role that references the portal view you want to customize. Switch to the role, if necessary.
2. On the main portal page, click [Options] on the portal button bar.
3. Configure the tabs, as described in the following sections:

Adding a New Tab

When you add tabs to a portal they are appended to the right of existing tabs.

1. On the Options page, go to the Tab Settings segment.
2. Click [Add].
3. On the Add New Tab page, type the name of the new tab.
4. In the Columns segment, use the buttons to add any number of narrow or wide columns. By default, one narrow and one wide column are added.
5. Change the order of the columns by selecting one and clicking [Move Left] or [Move Right].
6. To save the new tab and display it so you can add modules, click [Go to Tab].
7. Or, to save and return to the Options page, click [Return to Options] and then click [OK] to return to the main portal page.

Choosing a Default Tab

1. On the Options page, go to the Tab Settings segment.
2. In the Default Tab field, select the tab from the drop-down list box. This is the tab that is displayed when a user selects this role.
3. To save and return to the main portal page, click [OK].

Modifying a Tab

1. On the Options page, go to the Tab Settings segment.
2. Select a tab and click [Modify].
3. On the Modify Tab page, change the name of the tab, if desired.
4. In the Columns segment, use the buttons to add, remove, or modify columns. If a column is removed, all the modules within it are also removed.
5. To save the changes and display the tab, click [Go to Tab].
6. Or, to save and return to the Options page, click [Return to Options] and then click [OK] to return to the main portal page.

Deleting a Tab

1. On the Options page, go to the Tab Settings segment.
2. Select a tab and click [Delete].
3. When prompted, confirm the delete action.
4. To save and return to the main portal page, click [OK].

Reordering a Tab

1. On the Options page, go to the Tab Settings segment.
2. Select the tab that you want to reorder, and click [Move Right] or [Move Left].
3. Save and return to the main portal page by clicking [OK].

Configuring Modules

You can add any number of modules to a tab and customize them in a variety of ways, all depending upon how you want to present information through a portal view. Some modules can only be added to wide columns.

The role you are in must have a minimum edit permissions level of ViewAdmin in order to configure the portal view tabs.

1. Log in to SIP as a user who has access to the role that references the portal view you want to customize. Switch to the role, if necessary.
2. On the main portal page, select the tab on which you want to configure modules.
3. Configure the modules, as described in the following sections:

Adding Modules to a Portal View

When you add modules to a portal view, you are adding the module as it is configured by default and registered with SIP. Default module configurations are stored in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\registration\defaults

UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/registration/defaults

A fast and convenient way to add modules is through the module selection list at the bottom of each tab column. You can add one module to the tab, or add several modules at a time.

- Adding One Module
 1. Scroll to the bottom of the tab to which you want to add a module.
 2. Open the drop-down list box below the column, select the module you want to add, and click [Add].
- Adding Several Modules at a Time
 1. Scroll to the bottom of the tab to which you want to add modules.
 2. Go to the bottom of the column and click [Edit].
 3. On the Modify Column page in the Available Modules list, select a module and click [Add].
 4. To save the changes and return to the tab, click [Go to Tab].
- Creating Tabs and Adding Modules

Another way to add modules is through the [Options] button on the main portal page. This is particularly useful if you are setting up a tab from start to finish, including adding modules.

Modifying Modules in the Portal View

You can easily modify modules and customize them in a variety of ways, all depending upon how you want to present information through a portal view.

The role must have a minimum edit permissions level of ViewAdmin in order to configure the portal view tabs.

1. Log in to SIP as a user who has access to the role that references the portal view you want to customize. Switch to the role, if necessary.
2. On the main portal page, navigate to the tab on which the module appears.
3. Go to the module and click the edit button on the module title bar:



NOTE

For assistance on the individual module edit pages, click [Help]

4. To add a submodule to the portal view, select it from the list of Available *Submodules*, and click [Add].
5. To remove one from the portal view, select it from the list of Displayed Submodules, and click [Remove].
6. Some modules provide for the reordering of submodules. To reorder one, select it and click [Up] or [Down].
7. Some modules have additional configuration settings on the edit page or through direct editing of the XML files. Refer to the SIP manuals that document the individual management product integrations for detailed information.

NOTE

Some modules provide for configurations that are made at the global level. The settings affect all instances of a given module in every portal view to which it is added. Other configurations can be made on a per-module instance basis, affecting only the module as it appears

in a particular portal view. Furthermore, for some modules you can configure a filter at the module instance to further refine the management data that is displayed through the portal view. This type of filtering, sometimes referred to as display filtering, further restricts, beyond the management data filter, what the user sees through the portal view.

Refer to the SIP manuals that document the individual management product integrations for detailed information.

8. To save the changes and return to the main portal page, click [OK].

Removing Modules from a Portal View

When you remove a module, the action is final. Configurations made to the module cannot be restored. You can only add the default (unconfigured) module, as described in “Adding a New Tab” on page 120.

NOTE

You can use the rollup/rolldown feature if you only want to temporarily disable a module and not remove it. For more information, see “Restoring Modules That Have Been Removed” on page 125.

You can remove one module from the tab or remove several at a time.

- **Removing One Module at a Time**
 1. Navigate to the tab that has the module you want to remove.
 2. On the module title bar, click the [X] button.
- **Removing Several Modules at a Time**
 1. Scroll to the bottom of the tab to which you want to remove modules.
 2. Go to the bottom of the column and click [Edit].
 3. On the **Modify Column** page in the **Available Modules** list, select a module and click [Remove].
 4. Repeat step 3 until you have removed all of the modules you want to remove.
 5. To save the changes and return to the tab, click [Go to Tab].

Changing the Display Order of Modules

1. On the tab, go to the bottom of the column and click [Edit].
2. On the Modify Column page in the Available Modules list, select a module and click [Up] or [Down].
3. To save the changes and return to the tab, click [Go to Tab].

Restoring Modules That Have Been Removed

If you removed a module by clicking the close button [X] on the module title bar, the module cannot be restored. If you temporarily disabled a module instance by clicking the rollup button (Figure 6-2), you can restore the module by clicking the rolldown button (Figure 6-3).

Figure 6-2 Rollup button

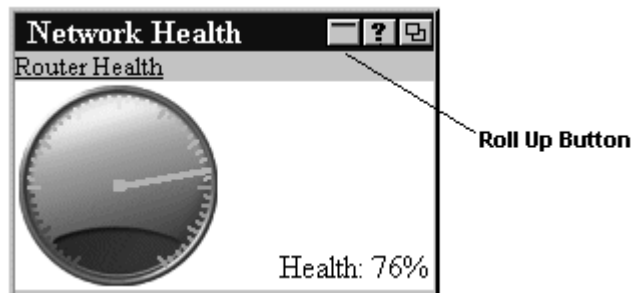


Figure 6-3 Rolldown button



Designing a Custom Look and Feel

SIP provides several ways for you to customize the portal look and feel to suit your company or that of your customers. These are advanced customizations that are made through the direct editing of XML, HTML, and JSP files. Following are the customizations you can make:

- A custom header that can contain your own graphic images.
- A custom footer that matches the header.
- Custom portal ‘skins’ (portal look and feel).

Customizing the Portal Header and Footer

At the top of the portal page is a header. In the header you can display your own custom logo or that of your customer, as well as a custom background image and text.

Customizing the Header

You will use the supplied default header as the basis of the custom header. After you have defined the custom header, you will override the default header by referencing yours in the customer’s portal view file.

1. Go to the directory where the default header is stored:

```
Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\webapps\ovportal\jsp\core\  
UNIX:/opt/OV/SIP/webapps/ovportal/jsp/core/
```

2. Copy and rename the default header file `header.jsp` to a custom header file name (for example, `customheader.jsp`).
3. With an ASCII editor, open the new header file and modify it to change the image files or add text. (The default code for `header.jsp` is shown in Figure 6-4 on page 127.) The following rules apply when modifying the `customheader.jsp` file:

- The *header* comprises the background image (banner), logo images, and text.
- The *customheader.jsp* file is an HTML fragment that should NOT have `<HTML><\HTML>` or `<BODY><\BODY>` tags inserted. When editing the HTML, you need to preserve the beginning and end table tags.

- When you make reference to images, use the following path:
``
Make sure you place the image files in the location:
`/OvSipDocs/C/images/`
- If you want the banner to show through a logo image, make the logo image transparent.
- The background image (color strip) in the default header is referred to as the *banner*. The default code for the banner is:

```
background="/OvSipDocs/Skins/Default/backgrounds/bg-fade.gif"
```

This default is only used if the skin is specified to be "[None]."

- Note that `class` equals "header" in the `customheader.jsp` file. The header class is defined in the cascading style sheet (CSS) files. If you want the header background image (banner) and position, as well as the text color to change based on the selected skin, `class` must equal header. But if you want to remove this dependency, you can remove the `class` attribute and value from your `customheader.jsp` file.

Figure 6-4 Default Code for header.jsp

```
<!-- Banner Title bar -->
<table class="header" cellpadding="10" cellspacing="0"
  border="0" width="100%" height="60"
  background="/OvSipDocs/Skins/Default/backgrounds/bg-fade.gif">
  <tr class="header">
    <td class="header" align="left" valign="middle">
      </td>
    <td class="header" align="right" valign="middle">
      </td></tr>
</table>
```

4. After modifying the text and image references, save and close the `customheader.jsp` file.
5. Next, insert a reference to the new header file into the portal view file of the customer to whom you want to display the customized header. With an ASCII editor, open the portal view file, which is stored in the following location:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\views\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/views/

6. The PortalView element can contain the portalHeader attribute. (It is not there by default, so you may need to add it.) Type the attribute as shown in the last line of the following example:

Figure 6-5 Example of portalHeader Element Added to a Portal View File

```
<PortalView colorScheme="/OvSipDocs/Skins/Default/Default.css"
  defaultSheetID="Sheet2" refreshRate="3600"
  showDateTime="yes" showUserName="yes"
  userName="Any User"
  portalHeader="customheader.jsp">
```

7. When you are finished, save the portal view file. You can expect to see the change the next time the portal view for this customer is displayed.
8. If you want to change the banner in the header for each of the skins, edit the header class definition in each CSS file that is registered in the OVPortalConfig.xml file. CSS files that are registered in the OVPortalConfig.xml appear as options in the Skins selection list on the Options page. (Figure 6-6 on page 129 shows the header class definition in the Default.css file.) Different banner images can be specified for each CSS file. Place the new background images somewhere under the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\htdocs\C\images\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/htdocs/C/images/

If you change the background image and change the text color, make sure the text color is well coordinated with the colors defined for the BODY class in the CSS file. For example, the monochrome CSS file defines a black background for the portal body. If header text is not defined as white, you will not see it.

To perform this type of customization, you need to be proficient in Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) v.1. Visit the W3C site for more information: <http://www.w3.org/Style/CSS/>.

Figure 6-6 header Class in default.css

```
/*
 * These are resources for the ISP-supplied header HTML.
 * These styles may not work depending upon the supplied HTML.
 */
.header {
  background-image:
    url("/OvSipDocs/Skins/Default/backgrounds/bg-fade.gif");
  background-position: left top;
  color: black;
}
```

9. If you want to remove the background image (banner) in the header, you must edit both the *customheader.jsp* and the CSS files. In the *customheader.jsp* file remove the code that specifies the background image. In each CSS file, remove the background-image definition and the background-position definition from the header definition.

Customizing the Footer

If you change the banner color in the header, you should consider doing the same for the footer, so that the colors are coordinated. You can change the color of the footer or place an image in it if you prefer.

The custom footer is defined the same way as the header. In a portal view file, a `portalFooter` attribute can be added to the `PortalView` element. If you want to add one, use the same procedure described for portal headers. The class value in the *customfooter.jsp* file would be "footer", and you would just reference the *customfooter.jsp* from the portal view file.

Customizing the Skins

To perform this task, you need to be proficient in Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) v.1. Visit the W3C site for more information:

<http://www.w3.org/Style/CSS/>

Mapping the ColorScheme Element to a CSS File

Before adding or extending existing style sheets it is important to understand the association between the `ColorScheme` name found in the *OVPortalConfig.xml* file and the cascading style sheet file.

Here is an example that illustrates the mapping:

On the Options page the Skins drop-down selection list includes Seascape. It appears on the selection list because it was added as a ColorScheme element in the OVPortalConfig.xml file, as shown below:

```
<ColorSchemes>
  <ColorScheme title="Seascape"
    styleSheet="/OvSipDocs/Skins/Seascape/Seascape.css">
</ColorSchemes>
```

The filename for the Seascape color scheme is Seascape.css and is stored in:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\htdocs\Skins\Seascape

UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/htdocs/Skins/Seascape

If you want to add additional items to the "Skins" selection list in the Options page, simply add to the existing entries in the OVPortalConfig.xml file and add the corresponding cascading style sheet as described below.

Creating a Cascading Style Sheet

Create a new *mycssfile.css* document and save it in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\htdocs\Skins*<MyCSS>*

UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/htdocs/Skins/*<MyCSS>*

You can add new classes to the cascading style sheets, but do not eliminate any of the existing ones. If you do you may inadvertently impact modules that rely on those classes.

Each supplied module defines the default appearance for the module. The cascading style sheets can be changed as a way of overriding the default appearance.

It may be easier to start from an existing file and make changes to it.

When creating a new skin, you may want to create or reference tabs that match your new color scheme. SIP provides a set of layered image files as a starting point for creating tabs. The format of these files is .psp (Jasc Paint Shop Pro). They are located in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\htdocs\C\images\framework\psp\

UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/htdocs/C/images/framework/psp/

NOTE

If you want to change other graphical images on the portal page (other than those in the banner), you need to use a graphics editor. The interface images are stored in the following directories:

Windows 2000:

```
%SIP_HOME%\htdocs\C\images\framework
%SIP_HOME%\htdocs\C\images\health
%SIP_HOME%\htdocs\C\images\service
```

UNIX:

```
/opt/OV/SIP/htdocs/C/images/framework
/opt/OV/SIP/htdocs/C/images/health
/opt/OV/SIP/htdocs/C/images/service
```

SIP relies heavily upon CSS class names to identify visual regions of the page. In Table 6-3 on page 131 is a description of each region. Refer to the CSS files for additional comments and uses.

Table 6-3 Cascading Style Sheet Classes and Descriptions

Class name	Description Title
BODY color background-color font-style font-size font-weight	Attributes for the entire page Text color for page Background color for page (can be replaced with background-image) Style for text on page (normal, italic, oblique) Size of text on page (point size, percentage) Thickness of text on page (normal, bold, bolder, lighter)
<p>Below are resources for service provider header HTML. These styles may not work depending upon the supplied HTML:</p>	
.header background-image background-position color	Attributes for the header portion of the page Image used for banner in header Placement for banner in header (top, center, bottom, left, right) Text color for text contained in header

Table 6-3 Cascading Style Sheet Classes and Descriptions (Continued)

Class name	Description Title
.footer background-image background-position color	Attributes for the footer portion of the page Image used for banner in footer Placement for banner in footer (top, center, bottom, left, right) Text color for text contained in footer
Below are resources that control all title and heading styles:	
.title color background-color font-style font-weight	Primary title for a page or area. Text color in the title Background color for the title Style for text in the title (normal, italic, oblique) Thickness of text in the title (normal, bold, bolder, lighter)
.subtitle color background-color font-style font-weight	Area beneath the primary title that looks like extension of the title (should have same settings as title) Text color in the subtitle Background color for the subtitle Style for text in the subtitle (normal, italic, oblique) Thickness of text in the subtitle (normal, bold, bolder, lighter)
.heading color background-color font-style font-weight	Highlighted area beneath the primary title that has a different but complementary color scheme Text color in the heading Background color for the heading Style for text in the heading (normal, italic, oblique) Thickness of text in the heading (normal, bold, bolder, lighter)
.subheading color background-color font-style font-weight	Area beneath the primary heading that looks like an extension of the heading (should have same settings as heading) Text color for the subheading Background color for the subheading Style for text in the subheading (normal, italic, oblique) Thickness of text in the subheading (normal, bold, bolder, lighter)
.heading A color	Anchor tag within heading Text color for anchor tag in heading

Table 6-3 Cascading Style Sheet Classes and Descriptions (Continued)

Class name	Description Title
.content color background-color	Primary data presentation area Text color for data presentation area Background color for data presentation area
.content A color	Anchor tag within primary data presentation area Text color for anchor tag in primary data presentation area
Below are resources for the rows of tabs near the top:	
.tabBar	The region occupied by the tabs.
.tabBar.edgeunsel background-image background-position	Left edge of left-most tab, when unselected Image for left edge of left-most tab, when unselected Position for image of left edge of left-most tab, when unselected
.tabBar.edgesel background-image background-position	Left edge of left-most tab, when selected Image for left edge of left-most tab, when selected Position for image of left edge of left-most tab, when selected
.tabBar.unselssel background-image background-position	Image for overlap between an unselected and selected tab Position for image of edge between an unselected and selected tab
.tabBar.selunsel background-image background-position	Image for overlap between a selected and unselected tab Position for edge between an selected and unselected tab
.tabBar.unselunsel background-image background-position	Image for overlap between two unselected tabs Position for image of edge between two unselected tabs
.tabBar.unseledge background-image background-position	Right edge of right-most tab, when unselected Image for right edge of right-most tab, when unselected Position for image of right edge of right-most tab, when unselected
.tabBar.seledge background-image background-position	Right edge of right-most tab, when selected Image for right edge of right-most tab, when selected Position for image of right edge of right-most tab, when selected

Table 6-3 Cascading Style Sheet Classes and Descriptions (Continued)

Class name	Description Title
.tabBar.active color background-image background-position background-repeat font-style font-weight	Center of selected tab Text color for text on the selected tab Image for the center of the selected tab Position for the image of the center of the selected tab Handling of repetitions of the image for the center of the selected tab (repeat-x for tab appearance) Style for text in the heading (normal, italic, oblique) Thickness of text on selected tab (normal, bold, bolder, lighter)
.tabBar.inactive color background-image background-position background-repeat font-style font-weight	Center of unselected tabs Text color for text on the unselected tabs Image for the center of the unselected tabs Position for the image of the center of the unselected tabs Handling of repetitions of the image for the center of the unselected tabs (repeat-x for tab appearance) Style for text in the heading (normal, italic, oblique) Thickness of text on unselected tabs (normal, bold, bolder, lighter)
.tabBar A text-decoration	Anchor tag in tab bar Decorations added to the anchor text (underline, overline, line-through, blink, none)
.tabBar A:hover text-decoration	Hovering mouse over anchor tag in tabbar Decorations added to the anchor text (underline, overline, line-through, blink, none)
Below are resources for the controls on the module title bars:	
.control color background-color	Primary controls used on the page Text color for primary controls used on page Background-color for primary controls used on page
Below are resources that control the tool bar that is usually immediately below the tabBar:	
.toolbar color background-color	General toolbar area Text color for the general toolbar area Background-color for general toolbar area

Table 6-3 Cascading Style Sheet Classes and Descriptions (Continued)

Class name	Description Title
.toolbar .context width font-weight padding-left	Display box on the left-hand side of the toolbar that contains the user name and roles drop-down Width of display box used for user name and roles Thickness of font in the user name area of toolbar (normal, bold, bolder, lighter) Amount of spacing on the left hand side of the display box
.toolbar .status width font-size font-style font-weight padding-left	Display box in the center of the tool bar that contains the time and date information Width of display box used for time and date Size of font for time and date (point size, percentage) Style for text in the heading (normal, italic, oblique) Thickness of font in the user name area of toolbar (normal, bold, bolder, lighter) Amount of spacing on the left hand side of the display box
.toolbar .buttons color width	Display box on the right-hand side of the toolbar that contains the buttons for options, logout, help, etc. Color for text in the buttons in the toolbar Width of display box used for buttons
.toolbar .buttons .button color width	Display area for the internals of an individual button in the tool bar Text color for label in individual button in toolbar Width of display area for individual button in toolbar
Below are resources for the entire content area occupied by the modules	
.modules border-style border-color border-width	General settings for modules Style for the borders surrounding the modules (solid, double) Width of the border surrounding modules
Below are resources for narrow columns. Typically these will be a fixed width and the trailing columns will be as big as they need:	
.narrow width	Specifications for narrow columns of modules Space to be used by the modules in narrow columns
.wide	Specifications for wide columns of modules

Table 6-3 Cascading Style Sheet Classes and Descriptions (Continued)

Class name	Description Title
Below are resources that control the display area for an individual module including the titlebar, heading and content regions. This is used to create a border around the module or to adjust padding between modules:	
<pre>.moduleBox border-style border-color border-width</pre>	General settings for the outside of each module Style for the borders surrounding each module (solid, double) Color used for the borders surrounding each module Width of the border surrounding each module
Below are resources that control the heading and content areas along (without the title bar):	
<pre>.module border-style border-color border-width</pre>	General settings for the outside of each module Style for the borders surrounding each module (solid, double) Color used for the borders surrounding each module Width of the border surrounding each module
<pre>.module .title color background-color padding-left</pre>	Settings for the title area within each module Color for text in the title area of each module Background color for the title area of each module Padding on the left hand side of the title area before the text in the title begins
<pre>.module .title .caption color background-color color</pre>	Settings for the caption or label on the left-hand side of the module title Color for text in the caption within the module title Background color for area containing the caption within the module title Padding on the left hand side before caption text begins within the module title
<pre>.module .title .controls color background-color</pre>	Settings for the controls on the right on the right hand side of the module title Color for text in the control area of the module title Background color for the control area of the module title

Table 6-3 Cascading Style Sheet Classes and Descriptions (Continued)

Class name	Description Title
.module .subtitle color background-color padding-left	Area beneath the module title that looks like an extension of the module title (should have same settings as module title) Color for text in the caption within the module subtitle Background color for area containing the caption within the module subtitle Padding on the left hand side before caption text begins within the module subtitle
.module .heading color background-color padding-left	Highlighted area beneath the module title that contains a label for submodules Text color in the module heading Background color for the heading Padding on the left hand side before the caption text in the module heading
.module.subheading color background-color padding-left	Area beneath the module heading that looks like an extension of the module heading (should have same settings as module heading) Text color in the module heading Background color for the heading Padding on the left hand side before the caption text in the module heading
.module .content color background-color padding-left	Data presentation area within the module Text color in the module data presentation area Background color for the module data presentation area Padding on the left hand side before the module content begins
Below are resources for the edit pages:	
.editarea color background-color font-size	Basic area on which edit controls are presented Text color for text presented in the edit area Background color for area on which edit controls are presented Size of fonts presented on the area where edit controls are presented (point size, percentage)

Table 6-3 Cascading Style Sheet Classes and Descriptions (Continued)

Class name	Description Title
.editarea .label color background-color font-size font-weight	Highlighted area within edit area that allows for a label to separate different sections of edit controls Text color for text presented in the edit area Background color for area on which edit controls are presented Size of fonts presented on the area where edit controls are presented (point size, percentage) Thickness of fonts used in highlighted areas within edit area.
Below are resources for the modules with tables:	
.oddrow color background-color	Settings for odd numbered rows in tables (e.g., 1, 3, 5) Color for text in odd numbered table rows Background color for odd numbered table rows
.evenrow color background-color	Settings for even numbered rows in tables (e.g., 1, 3, 5) Color for text in even numbered table rows Background color for even numbered table rows
Below are the footer resources that control the add drop-down list and anything else at the bottom of the screen:	
.footer padding color background-color	Area below the modules that contains controls for adding modules. Also Service provided footers Spacing surrounding the footer area Color for text presented in the footer area Background color for footer area
Below are the resources that define the Network Health background images for the gauges and detail indicators:	
.NHGauge .gauge background-image	The high-level gauge in the Network Device Health module. Image used to present 3D image of gauge on which values are presented

Table 6-3 Cascading Style Sheet Classes and Descriptions (Continued)

Class name	Description Title
Below are the NHdetail resources that correspond directly with the health ratings defined in the <Rating> tag of the netHealthConfig.xml file:	
.NHdetail .normal background-image background-position	Presentation controls for objects in Network Device Health detail tables that have normal health Image used in detail tables to represent objects with normal health Position for image within the detail table cell
.NHdetail .minor background-image background-position	Presentation controls for objects in Network Device Health detail tables that have minor severity health Image used in detail tables to represent objects with minor severity health Position for image within the detail table cell
.NHdetail .critical background-image background-position	Presentation controls for objects in Network Device Health detail tables that have critical severity health Image used in detail tables to represent objects with critical severity health Position for image within the detail table cell
.NHdetail .unknown background-image background-position	Presentation controls for objects in Network Device Health detail tables that have unknown health Image used in detail tables to represent objects with unknown health Position for image within the detail table cell

Portal View DTD

The tables below list the elements and attributes you will encounter in the portal view configuration files. The `PortalView.dtd` is located in the same directory as the portal view files:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\views\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/views/

The portal view file contains the following elements:

- PortalView
- Sheet
- Column
- ModuleInstance

Table 6-4 **PortalView Element**

Attribute	Description
userName	The user's name as you want it displayed in the salutation on the main portal page. <string> The userName can be overridden by user preference and displayName for the user in the User-Role Model.
refreshRate	The number of seconds to wait before refreshing the user's portal. <positive integer, [0..(2^32)-1]>
colorScheme	Specifies the color scheme to use when displaying the user's portal.
defaultSheetID	Specifies which Tab is active when the portal view is displayed. The value for this attribute should match the id of one of the Sheets defined in the portal view file. Each sheet is assigned a unique id by the management portal when it is created. <string>
showDateTime	Specifies whether or not to display the current time and date on the main portal page. <"yes" "no">
showUserName	Specifies whether or not to display the user's name on the main portal page. <"yes" "no"> Can be overridden by user preferences.
portalHeader	This attribute is not present by default. If you want to override the default header, you must add this attribute.

Table 6-4 PortalView Element (Continued)

Attribute	Description
portalFooter	This attribute is not present by default. If you want to override the default footer, you must add this attribute.

Table 6-5 Sheet Element

Attribute	Description
title	Specifies the name of the tab. <string>
id	A unique identifier for a sheet in the portal view file. The defaultSheetID attribute for the PortalView element will be set to the id for one of the sheets defined in the portal view file. The id string MUST begin with an alpha character, not a numeric character. <string>

Table 6-6 Column Element

Attribute	Description
width	A required attribute that specifies the width of the column to be placed on the sheet. Acceptable values are (narrow NARROW wide WIDE).

Table 6-7 ModuleInstance Element

Attribute	Description
title	Specifies the name of the module. This value is used as the module name in the portal view. <string>
id	A unique identifier for a ModuleInstance. This identifier is used by SIP to differentiate between instances of the same class within the portal view XML file. id is defined as an ID-tokenized attribute, meaning that an XML file using this attribute for this ModuleInstance element must specify unique text for each element. The id string MUST begin with an alpha character, not a numeric character. <string>

Table 6-7 **ModuleInstance Element (Continued)**

Attribute	Description
classid	<p>The unique identifier for a module class. This string is in the form:</p> <pre>classid="com.hp.ov.portal.modules.alarms"</pre> <p>This string is used by SIP to help identify which module to load, and to generate instances of a module class. The classid for a module is defined in the module registration file <i>OVModuleRegistration.xml</i></p> <p><i>Windows NT/2000:</i> %SIP_HOME%\registration\ <i>UNIX:</i> /etc/opt/OV/SIP/registration/</p>
help	<p>Specifies the URL to the help content for this module instance. This attribute allows you to override the default help URL defined in the module registration file. If you place your help topic somewhere under the /OvSipDocs directory, your topic will be displayed in the same decorative window in which SIP help topics are displayed. The recommended format is:</p> <pre>help="/OvSipDocs/C/help/<mod_directory>/<topic>.html"</pre>
rollupState	<p>Specifies whether the module is currently rolled "up" or rolled "down." The only thing visible on a rolled up module is its title bar and, if applicable, its instance headers. A module that is rolled down displays everything. <"up" "down"></p>

7 **Developing Portal Content**

Understanding the Modules That Are Supplied With SIP

Service Information Portal provides several out-of-the-box modules. These are:

- Modules that present information from HP OpenView management products, such as Network Node Manager (NNM), OpenView Operations (OVO) and Service Navigator (OVSN), OpenView Internet Services (OVIS), OpenView Service Desk (OVSD), OpenView Performance Insight (OVPI), and OpenView Reporter (OVR).
- Modules that present general information such as links to URLs and messages to your customers.
- Third-party integrations that are based on the SIP Generic module. (These are unsupported contributed modules.)
- The SIP Generic module, which you can use to develop modules that integrate your own application and data.

For a listing of all supplied modules, see Table 3-2 on page 36, Table 3-3 on page 39, and Table 3-4 on page 40.

Modules that Present Information from HP OpenView Management Products

Before you can display data through these modules, you must establish a connection between SIP and the management products. For more information, see Chapter 4, “Connecting SIP to Your Management Products,” on page 65.

For detailed information on configuring and using these modules, see the separate books located under the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\htdocs\C\manuals\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/htdocs/C/manuals/

To create your own online help topics for the supplied modules, see “Adding and Customizing Module Help Topics” on page 155.

Modules That Display Bookmarks and Messages

Two supplied modules deliver content that is not related to management data: the Message Board module and Bookmarks module.

- **Message Board Module:** A way of getting important information to your customers through the portal interface. Refer to “Sending Messages to Your Customers through the Message Board Module” on page 147 in the current chapter.
- **Bookmarks Module:** A way of integrating website links into the portal interface. Refer to “Providing Links to Other Websites Via the Bookmarks Module” on page 151 in the current chapter.

To create your own online help topics for the supplied modules, see “Adding and Customizing Module Help Topics” on page 155.

Contributed Integrations Based on the Generic Module

Several unsupported contributed integrations of other HP and third-party products have been developed and provided with SIP. Note that these are contributed modules and are not supported. They are located under the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\integrations\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/integrations/

See the Readme files in the directories under the integrations directory for instructions on registering and configuring these modules. Until they are explicitly registered, these modules are not available through the portal.

To create your own online help topics for these modules, see “Adding and Customizing Module Help Topics” on page 155.

The Generic Module for Developing Your Own Modules

In addition to presenting management data from OpenView products, you can integrate other applications and data through use of the Generic module.

The **Generic module** provides a non-programmatic way to easily and quickly incorporate into SIP your existing web applications, reports, and other data. You can create your own full-featured modules that can be added and customized through the portal interface, extending the functionality of SIP without writing portal-specific Java code.

Documentation on using the Generic module to develop your own modules is covered in a later section of this chapter.

Sending Messages to Your Customers through the Message Board Module

The Message Board provides a way of getting important information to your customers through the portal.

Developing Messages to Send Your Customers through the Portal

Messages are customizable through the Message Board Administration page. From this page you can create and manage the messages that appear in the Available Messages selection list on the Message Board Edit page. You can:

- Create new messages that include information such as the status of problems in the managed environment or new services that you want to offer your customers.
- Change the content of existing messages.
- Delete from the Message Board edit page (accessed from the module title bar) those messages that no longer should be available for display in customized portals.

TIP

In a portal view, if you reference a message file that contains no content (the message file length (size) is zero), the message will not be displayed. You can use this feature to prepare your portal views for a future message that you may want to communicate with some urgency. For example, if you assign to your portal views a message called "urgent" but leave the content blank, you can quickly disseminate information through this message in an emergency situation. Just be sure to remove the content of the message file after the emergency and not the file itself. If you delete a file that is assigned to a portal view, the portal will display the message "Data currently unavailable."

Accessing the Message Board Administration Page

1. Log in as a user who has access to a special SIP Administrator role. For more information, “Understanding Special SIP Administrator Roles” on page 77.
2. Switch to the SIP Administrator role, if it is not already displayed.
3. Click the Message Board tab.

Creating Messages

1. On the Message Board tab, click New.
2. In the File Name field, type a message file name that is unique, contains no spaces, and contains no non-alpha-numeric special characters. Also, the file name cannot begin with a forward slash (/) or with two periods followed by a forward slash (./).

This file name is the HTML file that will contain the message content. Message files are stored in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\modules\messageboard\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/modules/messageboard/

3. Type the name that you want to appear in the portal as the message title.
4. Type the message content.
5. Create the message and return to the main Message Board page by clicking [OK].

Changing the Content of a Message

If the message that you are changing is presented to multiple user roles, all of them will see the changes you make to the content.

Also, once you create a message, you cannot modify its HTML file name. Instead you must delete the file and create a new one with the new file name.

1. On the Message Board tab, select a message and click [Modify].
2. Modify the message name and content, as desired.
3. Save modifications and return to the main Message Board page by clicking [OK].

Deleting Messages

When you delete a message, you are deleting it from the Available Messages selection list only. (This list appears for a portal view when you click the edit button on the Message Board title bar.) If you perform this delete action while the message is still assigned to a portal view, it will continue to appear in the portal view until you manually delete it from the portal view through the Message Board Edit page.

1. On the Message Board tab, select a message and click [Delete].
2. When prompted, confirm the delete action.
3. Log in to each portal view that displays the message and remove the message from the Displayed Messages list accessed from the edit button on the module title bar.
4. Delete the message from the file system, if desired. Messages are stored in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\modules\messageboard\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/modules/messageboard/

Even after a message is deleted from both the Available Messages selection list and the portal views, the HTML file that contains the message content remains on the file system. You can delete it if you like. If you do not, you will not be able to reuse the message's file name.

Displaying Messages in Portal Views

After you have created messages through the SIP Administration Pages, they appear on the Available Messages selection list. This list appears when you are in a portal view and click the edit button on the Message Board title bar.

Choosing Messages to Be Displayed In a Portal View

1. Log in as a user who has access to the role you want to display messages to, and switch to the role.
2. Navigate to the Message Board module, and click the edit button on the module title bar.
3. On the Message Board - Edit page, select a message in the Available Messages field, and click [Add].

Sending Messages to Your Customers through the Message Board Module

4. Repeat the previous step until the `Displayed Messages` field contains all the messages you want to display to users in the current role.
5. To save and return to the main portal page, click `[OK]`.

Removing Messages from a Portal View

1. Log in as a user who has access to the role that displays the message you want to remove.
2. Navigate to the Message Board module, and click the edit button on the module title bar.
3. On the `Message Board - Edit` page, select a message in the `Displayed Messages` field, and click `[Remove]`.
4. Repeat the previous step until the `Displayed Messages` field contains only the messages you want to display to this customer.
5. To save and return to the main portal page, click `[OK]`.

Changing the Display Order of Messages in the Portal View

1. Log in as a user who has access to the role that displays the message you want to change, and switch to the role.
2. Navigate to the Message Board module, and click the edit button on the module title bar.
3. On the `Message Board - Edit` page, reorder the `Displayed Messages` by selecting a message and clicking `[Up]` or `[Down]`.
4. Repeat step 3 until the `Displayed Messages` field lists the messages in the order you prefer.
5. To save and return to the main portal page, click `[OK]`.

Providing Links to Other Websites Via the Bookmarks Module

The Bookmarks Module gives you a way to provide in your customized portals lists of links to useful web sites.

Developing Groups of Shared Bookmarks

A convenient way to manage the lists of bookmarks is to create groups of shared bookmarks, which can be assigned to multiple portal views. When you change the bookmarks, they are automatically updated in all portals that display them.

Through the SIP Administration Pages you can create, modify, and delete shared bookmarks. Through the edit button on the Bookmarks module title bar, you can assign or remove bookmarks from individual portal views.

Accessing the Bookmarks Administration Page

1. Log in as a user who has access to a special SIP Administrator role. For more information, “Understanding Special SIP Administrator Roles” on page 77.
2. Switch to the SIP Administrator role, if it is not already displayed.
3. Click the Bookmarks tab.

Creating a Shared Bookmarks Group

1. On the Shared Bookmark - Administration page, click Add.
2. In the Group Name field, type a name that is unique and contains no spaces.
3. In the Title field, type the name that you want to appear in the portal as the shared bookmarks group.
4. Define a bookmark by supplying the following entries:
 - Bookmark Name - The name of the link as it is displayed to users through their portal views.

Providing Links to Other Websites Via the Bookmarks Module

- URL - The URL link to the bookmark. You must include `http://` in the URL. For example, use `http://hp.openview.com` instead of `hp.openview.com`. See table
 - Window Name (optional) - The name of the new window to create (or reuse) when opening the URL so that the current portal window is not replaced. The value should contain no spaces.
5. Add the newly defined bookmark to the current shared group by clicking [Add To List].
 6. Repeat steps 4 and 5 until you have added all bookmarks for this shared group.
 7. When finished, return to the main Bookmarks Administration page by clicking [OK].

Modifying a Group of Shared Bookmarks

1. On the Shared Bookmark - Administration page, select a shared group and click [Modify].
2. To add a bookmark, define the Bookmark Name, URL and Window Name (optional) and then click [Add To List].
3. To modify an existing bookmark, select it from the Current Bookmarks list, and click [Modify]. Edit the bookmark definition (Bookmark Name, URL, and Window Name), and then click [Add To List].
4. To delete a bookmark from the shared group, select it from the Current Bookmarks list, and click [Delete].
5. To reorder the list of bookmarks in the group, select one from the Current Bookmarks list, and click [Up] or [Down].
6. When finished, return to the main Bookmarks Administration page by clicking [OK].

Deleting a Group of Shared Bookmarks

It is recommended that before you delete a group of shared bookmarks, you remove it from each of the portal views to which it is assigned.

When you delete a shared group, you are deleting it from the Shared Bookmarks list only. This list is displayed through a portal view by clicking the edit button on the Bookmarks module title bar. (The Shared

Bookmarks list is stored in the `sharedbookmarks.xml`. For more information about the module XML files, in Appendix F refer to “Creating Groups of Shared Bookmarks Through Direct Editing of XML” on page 341.)

If you delete a shared bookmark group before removing it from the portals that display it, in its place the Bookmark modules will display “Data Currently Unavailable.”

To remove it from portal views, log in to each portal that displays it, navigate to the Bookmarks module, and click the edit button on the module title bar. From the `Current Bookmarks` list, select the shared group and click `[Remove]`.

Table 7-1

Default Port and Protocol Settings for Bookmarks

Server Product	Protocol	Port	Configuration
Various	http	80	Server, port, and protocol configurable through the URL specified through the Bookmarks tab of the SIP Administration Pages or the Bookmarks module edit page accessed from the module title bar.
	https	443	

Displaying Bookmarks in a Portal View

If you want to display groups of shared bookmarks through a portal view, you must first create them through the `SIP Administration Pages`. (See “Creating a Shared Bookmarks Group” on page 151.) After they are created, they appear on the `Available Shared Groups` selection list that is displayed when you are in a portal view and click the edit button on the Bookmarks title bar.

NOTE

Bookmark groups (not to be confused with shared bookmark groups) can only be edited and configured through direct editing of the XML. For instructions, see “Grouping Entries” on page 345.

Choosing Bookmarks to Be Displayed In a Portal View

1. Log in as a user who has access to the role you want to display bookmarks to, and switch to the role.
2. Navigate to the Bookmarks module, and click the edit button on the module title bar.
3. On the `Bookmarks - Edit` page, add a bookmark by clicking [Add Bookmark] and then defining it.
4. Add a shared bookmark by clicking [Add Shared Group] and selecting it from the list of Available Shared Groups.
5. Repeat the previous step until the `Current Bookmarks` list contains all the bookmarks you want to display to users in the current role.
6. To save and return to the main portal page, click [OK].

Removing Bookmarks from a Portal View

1. Log in as a user who has access to the role that displays the bookmark you want to remove.
2. Navigate to the Bookmark module, and click the edit button on the module title bar.
3. On the `Bookmarks - Edit` page, select a bookmark from the `Current Bookmarks` list, and click [Remove].
4. Repeat the previous step until the `Current Bookmarks` list contains the bookmarks you want to display through the current role.
5. To save and return to the main portal page, click [OK].

Changing the Display Order of Bookmarks in the Portal View

1. Log in as a user who has access to the role that displays the bookmarks you want to reorder, and switch to the role.
2. Navigate to the Bookmarks module, and click the edit button on the module title bar.
3. On the `Bookmarks - Edit` page, reorder the `Current Bookmarks` by selecting a bookmark and clicking [Up] or [Down].
4. Repeat step 3 until the list is arranged in the order you prefer.
5. To save and return to the main portal page, click [OK].

Adding and Customizing Module Help Topics

SIP provides the capability to add your own help topic for any of the supplied modules, including Generic-based modules. You can provide a help topic for the default module, and also override it for an individual portal view.

When the user clicks the “?” button on the module title bar, the module will display the specified HTML help file.

Adding/Customizing a Default Help Topic

All modules that are supplied with SIP come with a default help topic, which is specified in the module registration file. If you want to customize the help topic or add a new one (as you may for your own Generic-based modules), you need to write the help topic, assign it as the default help topic (or a new topic that overrides the default help topic), and verify that the topic displays correctly.

Writing a Help Topic

1. Copy and rename any SIP help topic file. The new file can have any name that makes sense to you. Help files are stored in the directories under the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\htdocs\C\help\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/htdocs/C/help/

2. Write your help file content. Feel free to present a help page using the most appropriate style for the module, but follow these important guidelines:
 - Follow the HTML format that you find in the other files in the help directory.
 - Use HTML syntax that is supported by all web browsers.
 - Help is written for the module as a whole, not for individual submodules.
 - Use only ASCII or UTF-8 characters.
3. Save the new HTML help topic file and place it in the correct location:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\htdocs\C\help\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/htdocs/C/help/

Assigning a Topic as the Default Help Topic for a Module

1. Edit the module registration file located in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\registration
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/registration

2. Define/redefine the new help file path and name in the help attribute. The help attribute must be a URL and can point at documentation from the local system. The syntax should be:

```
help="/OvSipDocs/C/help/<mod_directory>/<topic.html>"
```

To see a sample module registration file, refer to Figure 7-26 on page 187.

3. Save the registration file.
4. Restart the servlet engine. For instructions, see “Restarting the Servlet Engine” on page 287.

Verifying that a Help Topic Displays

1. In a browser, log in as the appropriate SIP user.
2. If you have not already done so, add the module to the portal view.
3. Click [?] on the module title bar to ensure that the desired behavior is established.

Overriding the Default Help Topic

For a module instance within a portal view file, you can override the default help topic that is defined in the module registration file.

1. Write the new help topic and place it in the correct location, as described in “Writing a Help Topic” on page 155.
2. Using an ASCII text editor, open the portal view XML file that contains the module instance.
3. Navigate to the module instance. Insert the help attribute and specify the help value.

The `help` attribute must be a URL and can point at documentation from the local system. For example:

```
<ModuleInstance id="myModule  
    title="MyModule"  
    help="/OvSipDocs/C/help/MyDirectory/MyHelp.html">
```

4. Save and close the XML file.
5. Validate the XML, as described in “Validating XML Files” on page 309.
6. Verify that the topic display correctly, as described in “Verifying that a Help Topic Displays” on page 156.

Developing Modules that Integrate Your Own Applications and Data

In addition to presenting management data from OpenView products, you can integrate other applications and data through use of the Generic module. It gives you a way to provide additional information to your customers beyond what the supplied modules offer.

The **Generic module** is a non-programmatic way to easily and quickly incorporate into SIP your existing web applications, reports, and other data. You can create your own full-featured modules that can be added and customized through the portal interface, extending the functionality of SIP without writing portal-specific Java code.

Using the Generic module based on a simple specification in an XML file, you can create a module that is configurable through a user interface.

The Generic module also provides limited proxying capabilities for the URLs. This way, you can integrate into portal web sites that are behind a firewall and are not accessible to your end customer.

The Generic module offers you the following capabilities:

- **Display content from a specified URL.** For example, if you have an HTML file on a different server or a CGI program or other web application, you can display the contents of the URL by referencing the URL in a portal view file.
- **Display output from executable commands.** For example, if you want to run a command, such as `ping` or a command that generates results from a database, and display the output of the command in the portal, you can enter the command in a portal view file.
- **Display HTML from an external file.** For example, if you have a report in an HTML file on the local machine or a tool that generates reports in the form of text, you can display those reports through the portal by referencing the HTML file in a portal view file.
- **Display Content from XML that has been transformed using XSLT.** For example, if you have data in XML format that is generated from a reporter engine or a CGI program and that you typically present using a XSL transformation, SIP can transform this data for you and display it in the portal.

- **Display embedded HTML.** For example, if you have a tool that generates reports in the form of a GIF image, you can display the report through SIP by embedding the HTML in a portal view file.

For examples of the Generic module, log into SIP as admin user and switch to the *Integration Examples* role or *Demo* role. All modules in these two roles are based on the Generic module. Another example is the “Service Desk for Specialists” module in the *Help Desk* tab of the *LiveDemo* role.

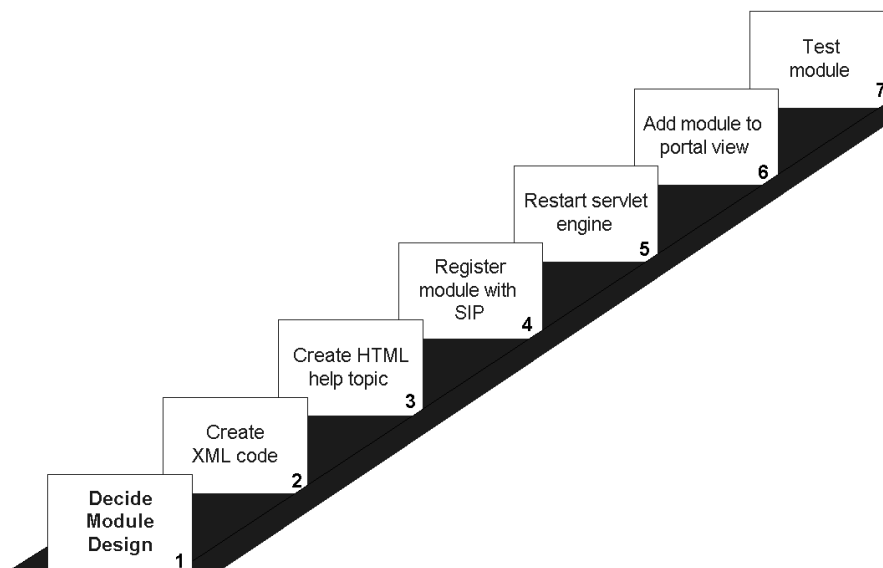
TIP

Generic modules can be added through the portal interface and customized through an Edit GUI. You can use the Generic module to create modules that have all of the functionality of a supplied, full-featured module.

Process of Creating Integrated Modules

The diagram below summarizes the process of creating integrated SIP modules based on the Generic module.

Figure 7-1 **Process of Creating Modules Based on the Generic Module**



You can easily understand the basic process of creating integrated modules by following a short tutorial provided in the next section.

Going through the Process: A Tutorial

You can easily understand the basic process of creating integrated modules by following this short tutorial. You are instructed to take a supplied, sample module that is based on the Generic module (in lieu of creating XML code, Step 2), register it with SIP (Step 4), restart the servlet engine (Step 5), and add it to a portal view (Step 6). The sections following the tutorial describe the steps in detail.

Create the XML

For this tour, you will use an existing default module file. Provided with SIP are several sample integrations that are based on the Generic module. Instead of developing XML for this exercise, you will use one of the sample integrations. (Note that default module XML must be placed in a specific location.)

The default module file contains a snippet of XML that makes up a complete Generic-based module. This code is added to a portal view file when you add a module through the portal interface.

Register an Integration Module with SIP

The registration file defines such information as a unique ID for the module, a reference to the servlet, the help file associated with the module, and the capabilities of the module.

1. Go to the following directory where the sample integration code and sample registration file are stored:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\integrations\Yahoo_Headlines
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/integrations/Yahoo_Headlines

2. Copy the files `OVDDefaultYahooHeadlines.xml` and `OVRegYahooHeadlines.xml` into the following directories, which are required locations:

- `OVDDefaultYahooHeadlines.xml`

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\registration\defaults
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/registration/defaults

- `OVRegYahooHeadlines.xml`

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\registration\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/registration/

Restart the Servlet Engine

After adding or changing a module registration file, you must stop and restart the servlet engine before the changes take effect in SIP. For instructions on doing so, see “Restarting the Servlet Engine” on page 287.

Add the Module to a Portal View

1. Start SIP by opening a browser and entering the following:
`http://<yourhostname.com>/ovportal`
2. Log in as **admin**.
3. From the Role selection list in the portal banner, select the role **Create A View**. Go to the [Add] button at the bottom of the wide tab column.
4. Select **Yahoo Headlines** and click [Add].

Resources for Creating Generic-Based Modules

Once you know the process for creating Generic-based modules, all you need is the supplied sample code and an understanding of the DTD. Below is a listing of resources and where you can find these.

Sample registration file

- *Windows 2000:*

%SIP_HOME%\integrations\Yahoo_Headlines\OVRegYahooHeadlines.xml

- *UNIX:*

/opt/OV/SIP/integrations/Yahoo_Headlines/OVRegYahooHeadlines.xml

Sample Generic-based Modules: OpenView Integration

Service Desk 4.0 is a registered module that does single sign-on and proxying. It is located in:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\registration\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/registration/

Sample Generic-based Modules: Third-Party Integrations

Concord, Keynote, NNM Commands, NNM Reports, Opticom, OV Service Desk 3.0, OV Reporter, Webtrends, and Yahoo Headlines:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\integrations\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/integrations/

Location of Default Module files

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\registration\defaults\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/registration/defaults/

Sample Portal View files

cannedDemo.xml and integration.xml located here:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\views\samples\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/views/samples/

DTD and Element Definitions

OVGeneric.dtd located here:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\views\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/views/

OVModuleRegistration.dtd located in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\registration\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/registration/

Rules for Editing XML Files

“Rules for Direct Editing of XML Files” on page 308.

Designing the Functionality of Your Module

Before you create a Generic-based module, you need to decide on the functionality you want to build into it. Answer for yourself the following questions:

- Do you want to provide for editing of the module configuration from the portal interface?

For example, you can provide an editing GUI with a choice list of module parameters. You can allow a person with `ViewAdmin edit` permissions to make these types of module configurations. For more information on edit permissions, see “Understanding Basic Roles” on page 76.

- If you provide an edit GUI, what parameters will you offer?

For example, parameters can be hosts, various reports, different commands, and for the different commands ability to have different parameters.

- Will the parameters be selected from a options list, or will they be entered into a text field?

For example, you can create a selection list of commands, or allow the text entry of a command.

- Will your module have multiple submodules?
- Because editing GUIs apply to the entire module and not individual submodules, how will you design the editing interface appropriately for all submodules?
- Do you want to develop an online help topic for your module?

If you do, keep in mind that, like edit GUIs, the help topic applies to the entire module and not individual submodules.

NOTE

To learn more about the kinds of choices you have when designing a Generic-based module, refer to the examples in “Displaying the Output from a Command” on page 165. Four examples illustrate the output of the “ping” command displayed through the portal; but each example uses a different approach.

Creating XML for a Generic-Based Module

The process of creating the XML code for a Generic-based module can be summarized in the following steps:

1. Find an example of a Generic-based module that is similar to the one you want to create. Make sure you copy the entire `Generic` element from the module’s default XML file.

NOTE

For the location of example modules, see “Sample Generic-based Modules: Third-Party Integrations” on page 162 and “Sample Portal View files” on page 162. You can also create a module from scratch. For detailed information on the XML elements and attributes, see the documentation that begins on page 190.

2. Copy and rename the default XML file that contains the example. Place the file in the defaults directory where the default module code for each registered module is stored:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\registration\defaults\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/registration/defaults/

3. Using a text editor, open the default file and modify the XML code.

For information and sample code that is specific to each type of submodule, see:

- “Displaying the Output from a Command” on page 165
- “Displaying HTML from an External File” on page 168
- “Displaying Embedded HTML” on page 171
- “Displaying the Contents of a URL” on page 173
- “Transforming XML Into a Displayable Format Using XSLT” on page 175

For additional functionality you can add to your module, see:

- “Proxying Capabilities” on page 176
- “Generic Module Single Sign-on” on page 176
- “Giving Your Module Access to SIP Data Through Variable Substitution” on page 177
- “Adding an Edit GUI to Your Module” on page 183
- “Adding Status Text, Graphics, and Links to a Submodule Title” on page 184

4. Save the file to the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\registration\defaults\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/registration/defaults/

Displaying the Output from a Command

Through SIP, you can display the output from program execution. In fact, you can capture anything generated to `stdout`. For example, if you want to run a command, such as `ping` or a command that generates results from a database, and display the output of the command in a portal, you can achieve this through the Generic-based module.

To display the command output, you will define the `Command` element in a `Generic` element. See the examples in Figure 7-2 through Figure 7-11 and the element definitions in Table 7-7 on page 196.

CAUTION

Be careful when presenting the results of a command. A command is executed as:

Windows 2000: the local "System" account

HP-UX: `www/www`

Solaris: `nobody/nogroup`

Make sure that only knowledgeable personnel implement this feature.

Figure 7-2 Example Ping Command

```
<Generic>
  <Submodule>
    <TitleBar title="Ping Command"/>
    <Command commandLine="ping.exe -n 3 localhost"
      expires="5" stripHtmlHeader="no" type="text/plain"/>
  </Submodule>
</Generic>
```

Figure 7-3 Example Ping Command: Three Machines

```
<Generic>
  <Submodule>
    <TitleBar title="Ping Local Host"/>
    <Command commandLine="ping.exe -n 3 localhost"
      expires="5" stripHtmlHeader="no" type="text/plain">
  </Command>
  </Submodule>
  <Submodule>
    <TitleBar title="Ping weminuche"/>
    <Command commandLine="ping.exe -n 3 weminuche.cnd.hp.com"
```

```

        expires="5" stripHtmlHeader="no" type="text/plain">
    </Command>
</Submodule>
<Submodule>
    <TitleBar title="Ping fcbeyond"/>
    <Command commandLine="ping.exe -n 3 fcbeyond.cnd.hp.com"
        expires="5" stripHtmlHeader="no" type="text/plain">
    </Command>
</Submodule>
</Generic>

```

Figure 7-4 Example Ping Command with Editing GUI: Option Parameter

```

<Generic>
    <Submodule>
        <TitleBar title="Ping Command"/>
        <Command commandLine="ping.exe -n 3 $HOSTNAME"
            expires="5" stripHtmlHeader="no" type="text/plain">
            <OptionParm name="HOSTNAME"
                prompt="Choose Ping Target" value="Local Host">
                <Option name="Local Host" value="localhost"/>
                <Option name="weminuche"
                    value="weminuche.cnd.hp.com"/>
                <Option name="fcbeyond"
                    value="fcbeyond.cnd.hp.com"/>
            </OptionParm>
        </Command>
    </Submodule>
</Generic>

```

CAUTION

Be aware that Figure 7-4 on page 166 and Figure 7-5 below are example only; for security reasons, you may not want to offer a text parameter or options parameters for commands.)

Figure 7-5 Example Ping Command with Editing GUI: Text Parameter

```

<Generic>
    <Submodule>
        <TitleBar title="Ping Command"/>
        <Command commandLine="ping.exe -n 3 $HOSTNAME"
            expires="5" stripHtmlHeader="no" type="text/plain">
            <TextParm name="HOSTNAME" prompt="Ping Target"

```

```
        value="localhost" />
    </Command>
</Submodule>
</Generic>
```

NOTE

To test that the functionality works in the portal, reference the following:

- “Registering a Module with SIP” on page 185
 - “Restarting the Servlet Engine” on page 188
 - “Adding the Module to a Portal View” on page 188
 - “Testing a New Module” on page 189
-

Displaying HTML from an External File

Through SIP, you can display HTML from an external file. For example, if you have a tool that generates reports in the form of a GIF image or text, you can display that report through the portal by referencing the HTML file.

To display HTML from an external file, you will define the `File` element in a `Generic` element. See the examples in Figure 7-6 on page 169 and the element definitions in Table 7-8 on page 199.

Rules for External HTML

- The file must be on your local machine or network. It cannot require http access. If you want to display files on a remote web server, then refer to “Displaying the Contents of a URL” on page 173.
- The file can be HTML or plain text. The `type` should be set to “`text/html`” when the content is HTML. The `type` should be set to “`text/plain`” when the content is plain text.
- The HTML should be well formed.
- The contents of an external HTML file should not include “header” tags such as `<HTML></HTML>`, `<HEAD></HEAD>`, or `<BODY></BODY>`. The portal will automatically provide these tags. If your HTML files include these tags, you can use `stripHTMLHeader`. For more information about `stripHTMLHeader`, refer to Table 7-7 on page 196.
- If you have style sheets in a file, your imported style sheets may be ignored. If you embed content from a URL that defines a cascading style sheet, it will override the SIP cascading style sheet.

Enabling SIP to Access Remote Files

The user that SIP is running as must have access to the remote files. By default, the Tomcat process is configured to run under the user “`www`” (on HP-UX) and “`nobody`” (on Solaris). On Windows 2000, Tomcat is configured to run as the “`system`” account.

A potential problem is that the user may have a different user id on the SIP server than it does on the remote system. For example, on the SIP system, user “`www`” has user id 101. On the remote system with the `/conf/share` directory, “`www`” has user id 30. When the id is passed in the authentication check, the authentication will fail.

On UNIX, the solution is to make sure that “www” or “nobody” has the same user id on both systems. Another possibility is running Tomcat as some other new or existing user, provided that both systems agree on the user_name/user_id mapping.

On Windows, by default, the Tomcat service is configured to run as the “system” account. When SIP tries to access shared resources on Windows, it only has the default, local system account privileges, and may not have access to shared drives on other machines. In this situation, configure the Tomcat service to be executed as a user who has access to the remote directory. The user should have “read” and “change” privileges to the remote directory.

In the Windows 2000 Services window, select the Tomcat service and view the properties. Select the Log On tab and specify the username and password of the user that Tomcat should run under. Stop and restart the service, and SIP will have the privileges that are granted to the given user.

Figure 7-6

Example: Displaying HTML from an External File from cannedDemo.xml

```
<Generic>
  <Submodule>
    <TitleBar titleAnchorText="Router Health"
      titleAnchorURL="/OvSipDocs/C/demo/router_details.html" />
    <File displayFileInfo="no"
      fileName="$SIP_HOME_DIR\docs\C/demo/router_health.html"
      stripHtmlHeader="yes" type="text/html" />
  </Submodule>
</Generic>
```

Figure 7-7

Example of Displaying External HTML Files With Editing GUI: Option Parameters

```
<Generic>
  <Submodule>
    <TitleBar titleAnchorText="Employee Files" />
    <File displayFileInfo="no"
      fileName="$SIP_HOME_DIR\docs\C/demo/$EmpFiles"
      stripHtmlHeader="yes" type="text/html" />
    <OptionParm name="EmpFiles"
      prompt="Choose Employee File" value="John">
      <Option name="John" value="john.html" />
      <Option name="Jane" value="jane.html" />
    </OptionParm>
  </Submodule>
</Generic>
```

```
        </OptionParm>  
    </File>  
</Submodule>  
</Generic>
```

NOTE

To test that the functionality works in the portal, reference the following:

- “Registering a Module with SIP” on page 185
 - “Restarting the Servlet Engine” on page 188
 - “Adding the Module to a Portal View” on page 188
 - “Testing a New Module” on page 189
-

Displaying Embedded HTML

Through SIP, you can embed a short HTML snippet in the portal view file. To display embedded HTML, you will define the `EmbeddedHtml` element in a `Generic` element. See the examples in Figure 7-8 on page 171 and the element definitions in Table 7-10 on page 207.

Rules for Embedded HTML

- Embedded HTML should be well formed.
- Embedded HTML should be brief; if the HTML content is lengthy, refer to “Displaying HTML from an External File” on page 168.
- The contents of embedded HTML should not include “header” tags such as `<HTML></HTML>`, `<HEAD></HEAD>`, or `<BODY></BODY>`. The portal will automatically provide these tags.
- The value you enter for embedded HTML may be any string of text not containing a less-than sign (`<`) or quotation marks (`"`), or similar characters. These characters may be inserted using the usual entity references (`<`, and `"`) or by their Unicode values using character references. All raw ampersands (`&`), those that do not begin a character or entity reference, must also be escaped as `&`. Embedded HTML must not contain: `"]]>`

Figure 7-8 Example of Displaying Embedded HTML from `cannedDemo.xml`

```
<Generic>
  <Submodule>
    <TitleBar title="Email Service"/>
    <EmbeddedHtml data="&lt;img height=79 width=239
      src=&quot;/OvSipDocs/C/demo/services/email-card.gif&quot;
      alt=&quot;/Email Service Card - Minor&quot;&gt;" />
  </Submodule>
</Generic>
```

Figure 7-9 Example of File and Embedded HTML

```
<Generic>
  <Submodule>
    <TitleBar title="Team Photo"/>
    <File displayFileInfo="no"
      fileName="$SIP_HOME_DIR\docs\C\demo\teamphoto.html"
      type="text/html" />
    <EmbeddedHtml data="&lt;br&gt;&lt;i&gt;Standing
```

```
        (from Left): Jane, Joe, Janet, Jack. Sitting  
        (from left): Bob, Bill, Betty, Beth;&lt;/i>>/>  
    </Submodule>  
</Generic>
```

NOTE

To test that the functionality works in the portal, reference the following:

- “Registering a Module with SIP” on page 185
 - “Restarting the Servlet Engine” on page 188
 - “Adding the Module to a Portal View” on page 188
 - “Testing a New Module” on page 189
-

Displaying the Contents of a URL

Through SIP, you can display the contents of a specified URL. For example, if you have an HTML file on a different server, or a CGI program, you can display the URL by referencing it in a portal view file.

You can display URLs in one of three ways:

- Inline frames (IFRAMES). Displays in scrollable window. The browser bears the responsibility for displaying the URL. Displays a link on browsers that do not support IFRAMES.
- Anchor tags. Displays a link.
- Embedded content. Displays in a non-scrollable window the content of the URL. SIP takes control of the content for display purposes.

To display the contents of a URL, define the `Url` element in a `Generic` element. See the examples in Figure 7-10 on page 173 and the element definitions in Table 7-9 on page 203.

All three mechanisms can be used by the URL submodule to pass a parameter (user name, role properties, SIP home directory) to the application. You can also make it part of the path to the file or URL that you are accessing.

Figure 7-10 **Example of Displaying Content of a URL**

```
<Generic>
  <Submodule>
    <TitleBar title="HP E-Services IFRAME on IE,
      Link on Netscape"/>
    <Url anchorText="HP E-Services" displayMethod="inline"
      href="http://www.hp.com/e-services" inlineHeight="300"
      proxy="no"/>
  </Submodule>
</Generic>
```

Figure 7-11 **NNM Commands Integration**

```
<Generic>
  <Submodule>
    <TitleBar title="SNMP Query"/>
    <Url href="http://$NNM/OvCgi/webappmon.exe?$report&sel=$target"
      displayMethod="inline" inlineHeight="300">
      <TextParm name="NNM" prompt="NNM Management Server:" value="islandia"/>
      <TextParm name="target" prompt="Target:" value="islandia"/>
    </Url>
  </Submodule>
</Generic>
```

```
<OptionParm name="report" prompt="Report:"
  value="Show Capabilities">
  <Option name="Demand Status Poll"
    value="app=IP+Demand+Poll&amp;act=demandStatusPoll"/>
  <Option name="Demand Poll"
    value="app=IP+Demand+Poll&amp;act=demandPoll"/>
  <Option name="Show Capabilities"
    value="app=IP+Demand+Poll&amp;act=capsPoll"/>
  <Option name="Ping" value="app=IP+Tables&amp;act=ping"/>
  <Option name="Remote Ping"
    value="app=IP+Tables&amp;act=rping"/>
</OptionParm>
</Url>
</Submodule>
</Generic>
```

If you want to activate the use of inline frames through the IFRAME HTML tag, set the `displayMethod` attribute to `inline` and use the `inlineHeight` attribute to specify the height of the inline frame. The default is 100 pixels.

NOTE

Netscape versions prior to 6.0 do not support inline frames; the URL will be displayed as an anchor tag using `anchorText` as the text for the anchor. If you set `displayMethod` to `anchor`, an anchor tag will always be present on both Internet Explorer and Netscape.

NOTE

To test that the functionality works in the portal, reference the following:

- “Registering a Module with SIP” on page 185
 - “Restarting the Servlet Engine” on page 188
 - “Adding the Module to a Portal View” on page 188
 - “Testing a New Module” on page 189
-

Transforming XML Into a Displayable Format Using XSLT

Through SIP you can display content from XML that is transformed using XSL (either a URL or a file). For example, if you have data in XML format that is generated from a reporter engine or a CGI program and that you typically present using a XSL transformation, SIP can transform this data for you and display it in the portal.

Figure 7-12 **Examples of Displaying Transformed XML Content**

```
<Generic>
  <Submodule>
    <XmlTranslation
      xmlHref=" $SIP_HOME_DIRhtdocs/C/demo/nethealth.xml "
      xslHref=" $SIP_HOME_DIRconf/styles/netHealthSum_pda.xsl "
      type="text/html" />
    </Submodule>
  </Generic>
<Generic>
  <Submodule>
    <TitleBar title="XML data with XSLT"/>
    <XmlTranslation xmlHref="C:/temp/todayData.xml "
      xslHref="C:/temp/topPerformers.xsl" type="text/html">
    </XmlTranslation>
  </Submodule>
</Generic>
```

NOTE

To test that the functionality works in the portal, reference the following:

- “Registering a Module with SIP” on page 185
- “Restarting the Servlet Engine” on page 188
- “Adding the Module to a Portal View” on page 188
- “Testing a New Module” on page 189

Proxying Capabilities

The SIP proxy capabilities will allow you to (1) Provide restricted access to a web page, web data, web server, and so forth, and (2) Provide access through SIP to management product data without requiring the user to log in to the product.

The Generic module provides limited proxying capabilities when displaying the content of a URL. When the `proxy` attribute is set to `yes`, the SIP server will access the URL directly (over the secure network, for example). This way you can display portal data that otherwise would not be accessible to the end user. In addition, you can also provide the name and password that will be used when accessing the protected data (see `auth` attribute in Table 7-9 on page 203).

Not all URLs will proxy well through the Generic module. If the URL uses JavaScript extensively, the page may not display fully correctly or some of its functionality will not be available in the module. In this case, you may need to set the `proxy` attribute to `no` and make the data system accessible to end users.

Generic Module Single Sign-on

Some URLs can only be accessed after authentication has occurred. When configuring SIP to display the contents of a URL, you can also configure SIP to automatically perform the required authentication prior to accessing the target URL. This is often referred to as “Single Sign-on.” SIP supports two forms of authentication for Generic module URL access: web server authentication and login page authentication.

Web Server Authentication

SIP performs web server authentication prior to accessing the URL specified in the `href` attribute if the following is true:

- Proxying is enabled (the `proxy` attribute is “yes” or `displayMethod` equals “embedded”), and
- The `auth` attribute is specified. For Web Server Authentication, the `auth` string should be of the form `"name:password"`.

Login Page Authentication

With login page authentication, SIP performs authentication by sending data to a URL that processes information normally submitted from a login page. Configuration of this feature requires some understanding of HTML and possibly javascript. In some cases, it may require an understanding of an application's internals. Login page authentication is performed if the following is true:

- Proxying is enabled (the `proxy` attribute is "yes" or `displayMethod` is "embedded"), and
- The `loginUrl` attribute is set, specifying a URL for login page processing. This URL can often be determined by viewing the HTML source of the application's login page. SIP will perform an HTTP POST request to this URL, sending the parameters specified in the `auth` attribute (see below).
- The `auth` attribute is set, specifying the parameters to be passed to the `loginUrl` target. These parameters can often be determined by viewing the HTML source of the application's login page. Individual parameters are separated by `&` characters.

See the `OVDDefaultServiceDeskSpec.xml` in the `registration/defaults` directory for an example of a generic module that uses login page authentication.

Giving Your Module Access to SIP Data Through Variable Substitution

Your Generic-based module can be extended to allow the retrieving of user-specific information from SIP using predefined variables. If placed in the `commandLine`, `fileName`, `auth`, `href`, `xmlHref`, and `xslHref` attributes, the variables will be replaced by the Generic-based module with current SIP data.

Three variables give your integrated module access to information about the SIP home directory, the user that is logged in, and the role of that user. Note that you can access this information, but you cannot change it.

Table 7-2 Variable Substitution

Variable	Description
\$SIP_HOME_DIR	<p>This variable will be replaced with the SIP installation directory, for example, C:\Program Files\HP OpenView\SIP. This variable can be placed in a commandLine, fileName, href, xmlHref, xslHref, or auth attribute in the Command, File, Url, and XmlTranslation elements respectively. For an example of using \$SIP_HOME_DIR, see Figure 7-17 on page 180.</p>
\$OVLOGIN	<p>This variable allows you to make a user login name part of a command, file, XML translation, auth string, or URL. \$OVLOGIN will be replaced with the user's login name. For examples of using \$OVLOGIN, see Figure 7-13, Figure 7-14, and Figure 7-15 on page 179.</p>
\$OVROLE	<p>Allows applications to get data about user's current role, edit permissions, organizations defined by the management data filter, and the property name. An application can use this information to determine what to display to the user.</p> <p>This is done by first defining a Role in the user role package file. Specific keywords allow you to access four aspects of the role definition: current role, edit permissions, MgmtData filter, and properties:</p> <p>\$OVROLE[OVName] \$OVROLE[OVEditLevel] (See Figure 7-18 and Figure 7-19 on page 180.)</p> <p>\$OVROLE[OVOrgs] (See Figure 7-20 on page 181.)</p> <p>\$OVROLE[<property name>] See Figure 7-21 and Figure 7-23 on page 182.</p>

Login Name Substitution

You can substitute in a user login name as part of a command, file name, URL, XML translation, or auth string. If you have an accessible URL that is login-name based, you can substitute in `OVLOGIN` as part of the URL.

If you have a CGI program that you want to refer to on another server and the program is keyed off of a user login name, you can substitute `OVLOGIN` as part of the URL string. (See example in Figure 7-13.) When the Generic-based module sees this href with `OVLOGIN`, it substitutes in the user name as part of the href and then allows the browser to fetch the document. In addition, you can use `OVLOGIN` in an auth attribute.

Figure 7-13 **Example of Login Name Substitution (`OVLOGIN` in URL)**

```
<Url href="http://webpage.mycompany.com/OVLOGIN/employeephoto.gif" />
```

In the example in Figure 7-13, the Generic-based module would display an image from the directory named for the SIP user. For example, if the SIP user name is “jan” then the accessed URL would be “http://webpage.mycompany.com/jan/employeephoto.gif”

Figure 7-14 **Example of Login Name Substitution (`OVLOGIN` in Command)**

```
<Command commandline="ping OVLOGIN" />
```

In the example in Figure 7-14, the Generic-based module would attempt to ping a host with the same name as the logged-in user. For example, if the SIP user name is “john” then the command executed would be “ping john”.

Figure 7-15 **Example of Login Name Substitution (`OVLOGIN` in File Name)**

```
<File fileName="C:/EmployeeFiles/OVLOGIN.html" />
```

In the example in Figure 7-15, the Generic-based module would display a file named for the SIP user. For example, if the SIP user name is “Jan” then the accessed file would be “C:/EmployeeFiles/Jan.html”.

Figure 7-16 **Example of Login Name Substitution (`OVLOGIN` in auth attribute)**

```
<Url href="http://webpage.mycompany.com/"  
auth="OVLOGIN:passwd" />
```

Figure 7-16 is an example of web server authentication accomplished with variable substitution.

SIP Installation Directory Substitution

In the example in Figure 7-17 on page 180, the portal will display a file called `services.html` that is located in the SIP home directory hierarchy.

For example, if SIP is installed in:

```
C:\Program Files\HP OpenView\SIP
```

Then the displayed file is:

```
C:\Program Files\HP OpenView\SIP\htdocs\C\demo\services.html
```

Figure 7-17

Example of `$SIP_HOME_DIR` Used in File Name

```
<Submodule>
  <TitleBar title="Services Purchased"/>
  <File fileName="$SIP_HOME_DIR\htdocs\C\demo\services.html"
        type="text/html" stripHtmlHeader="yes"/>
```

User Role Substitution

In the example in Figure 7-18, the portal will execute `myapplication` and pass the user's current role and edit permissions as two parameters to `myapplication`. The application can then use this information to determine what to display to this user.

Figure 7-18

Example of `$OVROLE[OVNAME]` Used in a Command

```
<Command commandline="myapplication $OVROLE[OVName] $OVROLE[OVEditLevel]"/>
```

If the role is `AcmeTechnical` and the edit permissions level is `ViewAdmin`, then the command executed would be:

```
myapplication AcmeTechnical ViewAdmin.
```

Figure 7-19

Example of `$OVROLE[OVNAME]` Used in a URL href

```
href="http://webpage.mycompany.com/foo.exe?role=$OVROLE[OVNAME]&permission=$OVROLE[OVEditLevel]"
```

In the example in Figure 7-19, the portal will execute the remote application and pass the user's current role and edit permissions as two parameters to `foo.exe`. If the role is `AcmeTechnical` and the edit permissions level is `ViewAdmin`, then the URL accessed would be:

```
"http://webpage.mycompany.com/foo.exe?role=AcmeTechnical&permission=ViewAdmin"
```

Figure 7-20 Example of \$OVROLE[OVOrgs] Used in a Command

```
<Command commandline="myapplication '$OVROLE[OVOrgs]'" />
```

In the example in Figure 7-20, the portal will execute `myapplication` and pass the management data associated with the user's current role as a parameter to `myapplication`.

If the management data filter defines the three organizations `Ariston`, `Kalloi`, and `Another Group`, then the command executed would be:

```
myapplication 'Ariston|Kalloi|Another Group'
```

Rules for Substitution of Management Data

- If a role is allowed to see all management data, the value of `$OVROLE[OVOrgs]` will be replaced with "`<ALL>`"
- If a role is not allowed to see any management data, the value of `$OVROLE[OVOrgs]` will be replaced with "`<NONE>`"
- If a role is allowed to see one organization's data, the value of `$OVROLE[OVOrgs]` will be replaced with the organization name.
- If a role is allowed to see the data of multiple organizations, then the organization names are passed as a string separated by the pipe character. For example, "`Ariston|Kalloi|Another Group`".

Figure 7-21 Example of Role Properties Defined in User Role Package File

```
<Properties>  
  <Property name="MgmtApp.login" value="acme"/>  
  <Property name="MgmtApp.password" value="acmepasswd"/>  
</Properties>
```

In the user role package file, you would define the role properties as in Figure 7-21. Then, in the Generic-based module code, you would define the URL using `$OVROLE[<property name>]`. In the example in Figure 7-23, the portal will execute the remote application and pass the user's `MgmtApp` login and password as two parameters to `MgmtApp.exe`.

NOTE

A module, whether supplied or Generic-based, may have need for additional role attributes. The role properties element can contain any number of property elements, and each property element has two attributes: name and value. The value of the name attribute is property name. The value of the value attribute is property value.

For example, the supplied OVIS module uses Role Properties to map a SIP role to a OVIS server and customer. To do this, you must define two properties named: `OVIS.server` and `OVIS.customer`. The value of the `OVIS.server` should be set to the fully qualified name of the OVIS system. The value of `OVIS.customer` should be set to the OVIS customer name. For detailed instructions on configuring role properties for OVIS and OVSD, see the individual SIP manuals that handle the integrations of those products.

Generic-based modules can also access the additional role properties. If your module needs to access role properties information, define the role properties in the role file and use variable substitution to pass the information to your application.

Figure 7-22 Example of Login Name Substitution (\$OVLOGIN in auth attribute)

```
href="http://webpage.mycompany.com/" auth="$OVLOGIN:acmepasswd"
```

Figure 7-16 is an example of web server authentication accomplished with variable substitution. The resulting auth string would look like this:

```
acme:acmepassword
```

Figure 7-23 Example of \$OVROLE[<property name>] Used in a URL

```
<Url
href="http://webpage.mycompany.com/MgmtApp.exe?login=$OVROLE[MgmtApp.login]&password=$
OVROLE[MgmtApp.password]"/>
```

Referring to the Properties definition in the user role package file in Figure 7-21, the accessed URL would be:

```
http://webpage.mycompany.com/MgmtApp.exe?login=acme&password=acmepasswd
```

Figure 7-24 **Example of \$OVROLE in Login Page Authentication**

```
auth="vLogin=$OVROLE[ServiceDesk.userName]&vPasswd=$OVROLE[ServiceDesk.password]&vHaveAccount=yes&vTimezone=$Timezone&vLanguage=$Language"
```

Figure 7-24 is an example of login page authentication accomplished using variable substitution. For a example definitions of the other elements required to make login page authentication work, see the default Service Desk module:

Windows 2000:

```
%SIP_HOME%\registration\defaults\OVDefaultServiceDeskf4.xml
```

UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/registration/defaults/OVDefaultServiceDeskf4.xml

Adding an Edit GUI to Your Module

An edit GUI can be added to individual submodules or to the module as a whole. An edit GUI can be valuable for `Command`, `File`, `Url`, and `XmlTranslation` submodules. With this feature, you can define parameters and then reference them in the `commandLine`, `fileName`, `href`, `xmlHref`, or `xslHref`. In the reference to the parameter, the tag must be `$<ParameterName>` where `<ParameterName>` is the name of the parameter defined in the element.

For examples, see Figure 7-4 on page 166, Figure 7-7 on page 169, and Figure 7-5 on page 166. Also, see examples in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\integrations\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/integrations/

Refer, also, to the `TextParm` attributes and `OptionParm` attributes in the section “Generic Module DTD” on page 190.

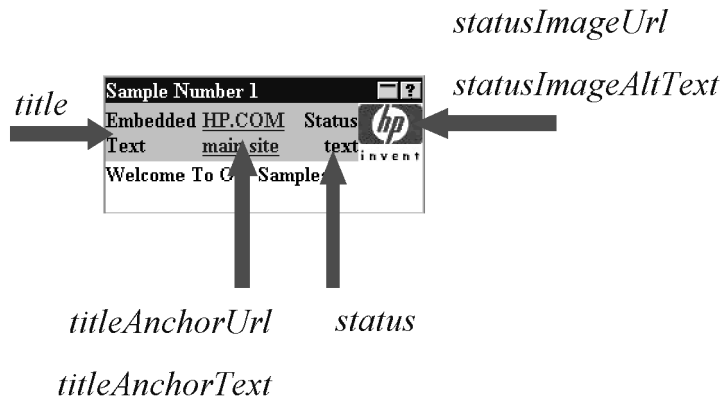
Adding Status Text, Graphics, and Links to a Submodule Title

There are four types of information that can be added to an submodule title bar area. At a minimum, you typically have a title using the `title` attribute. In addition, you can have a link to detailed data, an area for status text, and an area for a status image.

The submodule title is filled in from left to right in the following order:

- `title`
- `titleAnchorUrl|titleAnchorText`
- `status`
- `statusImageUrl/statusImageAltText`

Figure 7-25 Titlebar Attributes of a Submodule



NOTE

For detailed information on elements and attributes of the Generic module, see “Generic Module DTD” on page 190, Table 7-3 on page 193, and Table 7-6 on page 195.

Adding a Link in the Submodule Title Bar

There are two attributes of the `TitleBar` element that control placing a link to detailed data in the title bar. These are `titleAnchorUrl` and `titleAnchorText`. Specify the link's URL in `titleAnchorUrl` and specify the link's text in `titleAnchorText`.

For example:

```
<TitleBar titleAnchorText="Server Health"
  titleAnchorUrl="/OvSipDocs/C/demo/server_details.html"/>
```

Adding Status Text and Status Graphics in the Submodule Title Bar

Plain status text can be presented in the submodule title bar using the `status` attribute. In addition, an image can be placed in the submodule title using the attributes: `statusImageUrl` and `statusImageAltText`. The following example demonstrates both:

```
<TitleBar status="115 alarms"
  statusImageAltText="80% major, 20% Normal"
  statusImage="/OvSipDocs/C/demo/alarm1.gif"
  title="Threshold Alarms"/>
```

Adding Online Help to a Generic-Based Module

SIP provides the capability to add online help for a Generic-based module. When the user clicks the “?” button on the module title bar, the Generic module will display the specified HTML help file. You can provide a help topic for the default module and also override it for an individual portal view. For instructions, see “Adding and Customizing Module Help Topics” on page 155.

Registering a Module with SIP

After you have created your module you can register it with SIP. This is done through a module registration file. The registration file defines such information as a unique ID for the module, a reference to the servlet, an associated help file for the module, and module capabilities.

1. Create a module registration file by copying, renaming, and modifying one of the existing ones located in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\registration

UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/registration

2. Edit the registration file to define module-specific information:

- Enter `title`. This is the title that is displayed in the module's title bar in the portal.
- Enter `classid`. This required attribute uniquely identifies the module. It must be unique among all registered modules.
- Enter `implementation`. This required attribute is a reference to the servlet that implements the module. This is the name of the Java class implementing the Generic servlet. For Generic modules, this value is always the same:

```
"/servlet/com.hp.ov.portal.modules.ovgeneric.GmGenericServlet"
```

For an example, see Figure 7-26 on page 187.

- Enter `outputType`. This attribute is used to determine in what column type to place the module.
- Set the `add` attribute to "yes" if you want to allow the adding of this module from the user interface. If "yes", SIP will check the user configuration file to determine whether to allow it.
- Set the `edit` attribute to "yes" if you want to allow editing capabilities from the user interface. If "yes", SIP will check the user configuration file to determine whether to allow it.
- Enter `help`, a pointer to the default help file for this module.
- Enter `configDTD`, the name of the module's Document Type Definition (DTD). This is the `OVGeneric.dtd`.
- Enter a value for `defaultConfigXML` only if `add="true"`. This optional attribute provides the path to an XML file with an XML fragment for the module configuration. This XML fragment will be added to the portal view when a user with editing permissions set to `ViewAdmin` adds the module through the module selection Add button.

3. Save the registration file.

Figure 7-26 Sample Module Registration File from Integrations Directory

```
<?xml version="1.0" standalone="no"?>
<!DOCTYPE ModuleRegistration SYSTEM "OVModuleRegistration.dtd">
<ModuleRegistration
  vendorName="Hewlett-Packard Company"
  vendorURL="http://www.openview.hp.com"
  description="HP OpenView SIP Keynote Module"
  version="1.0"
  title="Keynote"
  classid="Keynote"
  implementation="/servlet/com.hp.ov.portal.modules.ovgeneric.GmGenericServlet"
  outputType="wide"
  add="yes"
  edit="no"
  help="/OvSipDocs/C/help/<mod_directory>/<topic.html>"
  defaultConfigXML="defaults/OVDefaultKeynote.xml"
  configDTD=" "
/>
```

Figure 7-27 OVModuleRegistration.dtd

```
<!-- OVModuleRegistration.dtd -->
<!-- Copyright (c) 2000 Hewlett-Packard Company -->
<!-- $Revision: /main/BACCHUS/8 $ -->
<!-- $Date: 2001/03/15 00:13 UTC $ -->

<!ELEMENT ModuleRegistration EMPTY>

<!ATTLIST ModuleRegistration
  vendorName          CDATA #IMPLIED
  vendorURL           CDATA #IMPLIED
  description          CDATA #IMPLIED
  version             CDATA #IMPLIED
  category            CDATA "General"
  title               CDATA #IMPLIED
  classid             ID #REQUIRED
  implementation       CDATA #REQUIRED
  outputType          (narrow|NARROW|wide|WIDE|any|ANY) "narrow"
  add                 (1|0|YES|yes|NO|no) "no"
  edit                (1|0|YES|yes|NO|no) "no"
  help                CDATA #IMPLIED
  configDTD           CDATA #IMPLIED
  defaultConfigXML    CDATA #IMPLIED
  moduleTimeout       CDATA "90">
```

Restarting the Servlet Engine

After registering a module with SIP, you must stop and restart the servlet engine before the changes take effect in SIP. You can do so through the *SIP Administration Pages* or from the command line. For instructions, see “Restarting the Servlet Engine” on page 287.

Adding the Module to a Portal View

After you create and register your Generic-based module, you can add it to a portal view so that it appears in a portal. Generic-based modules are added in the same way other modules are added: (1) Through the interface (the preferred method), or (2) Through direct editing of the portal view XML file to insert the `Generic` and `Submodule` elements and attributes.

Through the SIP Interface (Preferred Method)

1. Log in to SIP as a user with access to the appropriate role. If the user has access to multiple roles, switch to the appropriate one.
2. Create or go to the tab to which you want to add the module.
3. Scroll to the bottom of the tab.
4. Select a module from the drop-down list and click [Add].

Through Direct Editing of the XML

Generic-based modules can be added and configured by directly editing a portal view file. This approach is not recommended because you can easily introduce XML syntax problems.

Make a backup of configuration files before you customize them. If you edit the XML file and get incorrect XML syntax, you may want the ability to revert to the previous version of the file.

NOTE

For detailed information on elements and attributes of the `Generic` module, see “Generic Module DTD” on page 190, Table 7-3 on page 193 and Table 7-6 on page 195.

1. In an ASCII editor, open the file that has your Generic-based module code, and copy the entire `Generic` element. The XML files for default modules are stored in the following location:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\registration\defaults\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/registration/defaults/

2. Open the portal view file to which you want to add the Generic-based module. Portal view files are located in following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\views\
UNIX: /opt/OV/share/SIP/conf/share/views/

3. Find the Sheet (tab) and Column that you want the Generic module to appear on, and create a new `ModuleInstance`. For information on the `ModuleInstance` element, see “Portal View DTD” on page 140.

NOTE

Make sure the new module instance has an `id` that is unique among all module instances in the portal view file.

4. Paste the `Generic` element into the `ModuleInstance` element.
5. After modifying XML files, always validate the XML syntax. For help on validation tools, see “Validating XML Files” on page 309.

Testing a New Module

It is important to test the new module to make sure the functionality is working as expected. If you added the module manually to the portal view file, verify that the syntax is correct and that the executables and files are in locations that are accessible to the SIP.

1. Log in to SIP as a user with access to the appropriate role. If the user has access to multiple roles, switch to the one that displays the module you added.
2. Verify that the Generic-based module displays and functions as intended. Make sure the results in the browser are correct.
3. Modify the Generic module XML, as needed.

Generic Module DTD

To create integrated modules based on the Generic module, you need to understand the document type definition (DTD) and specifications behind the module. Each instance of the Generic module is configured based on the DTD defined in the `OVGeneric.dtd` file located in:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\views\
UNIX: /opt/OV/share/SIP/conf/share/views/

A Generic element defines an instance of the Generic module and contains the following:

```
<Generic> consists of one or more:
  <Submodule> consists of:
    <TitleBar>
    <Command> or <File> or <URL>
    <EmbeddedHtml>
  </Submodule>
</Generic>
```

Figure 7-28 on page 190 shows the Generic module DTD. Table 7-3 through Table 7-14 describe the DTD elements and attributes.

Figure 7-28 OVGeneric.dtd

```
<!-- OVGeneric.dtd -->
<!-- Copyright (c) 2000 Hewlett-Packard Company -->
<!-- $Revision: /main/BACCHUS/HAITI/ARUBA/3 $ -->
<!-- $Date: 2002/12/03 18:24 UTC $ -->

<!ELEMENT Generic (GlobalParms?, Submodule+)>
<!ELEMENT GlobalParms ((TextParm*, OptionParm*)*)>
<!ELEMENT Submodule (TitleBar?, (Command? | File? | Url?
  | XmlTranslation?), EmbeddedHtml?)>
<!ELEMENT TitleBar EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST TitleBar
  title CDATA #IMPLIED
  titleAnchorUrl CDATA #IMPLIED
  titleAnchorText CDATA #IMPLIED
  status CDATA #IMPLIED
  statusImageUrl CDATA #IMPLIED
  statusImageAltText CDATA #IMPLIED
>
<!-- EmbeddedHtml - this is HTML that will be embedded as -->
<!-- it is at the end of the extension i.e. below command output -->
```

```

<!-- or file. Notice also that Submodule may display only -->
<!-- Embedded HTML if an Submodule doesn't contain Command, -->
<!-- File nor Url -->

<!ELEMENT EmbeddedHtml EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST EmbeddedHtml
    data CDATA #IMPLIED
>
<!ELEMENT Command ((TextParm*, OptionParm*)*)>
<!ATTLIST Command
    commandLine CDATA #REQUIRED
    type CDATA "text/plain"
    expires CDATA "0"
    stripHtmlHeader (yes | YES | no | NO | 0 | 1) "no"
>

<!ELEMENT File ((TextParm*, OptionParm*)*)>
<!ATTLIST File
    fileName CDATA #REQUIRED
    type CDATA "text/plain"
    encoding CDATA "UTF-8"
    displayFileInfo (yes | YES | no | NO | 0 | 1) "no"
    stripHtmlHeader (yes | YES | no | NO | 0 | 1) "no"
>

<!-- If displayMethod is "inline" or "anchor" then to proxy -->
<!-- or not depends "proxy" attribute. If displayMethod is -->
<!-- "embedded" then we are always proxying (proxy should -->
<!-- be set to "yes", but actually portal ignores this attribute. -->
<!-- auth and loginUrl are used only if proxying is being done. -->
<!-- If auth is set, but loginUrl is not, web server -->
<!-- authentication is performed. In this case, auth should -->
<!-- be of the form "user:password". If both auth and loginUrl are set, -->
<!-- authentication is performed via the loginUrl, which specifies -->
<!-- the URL for a login page. In this case, auth should contain the -->
<!-- URL parameters necessary to perform the login, separated by -->
<!-- "&";. Usually the parameter string contains some sort of -->
<!-- user and password specification. If handshake is set to "yes" then a -->
<!-- handshake is done initially, i.e., the handshakeUrl is accessed. If any -->
<!-- cookie is available in the response, this cookie is used when making -->
<!-- further requests to the website. Handshake only works for web server -->
<!-- authentication. -->

<!-- The "windowName" attribute identifies the name of the window into -->
<!-- which the content of the Url should be displayed. The "showAsButton" -->
<!-- attribute applies only if displayMethod is "anchor". It causes the -->
<!-- Url to be shown as a button at the bottom of the module instead -->
<!-- of a link. -->

```

```

<!ELEMENT Url ((TextParm*, OptionParm*)*)>
<!ATTLIST Url
    href CDATA #REQUIRED
    displayMethod (inline | anchor | embedded) #REQUIRED
    inlineHeight CDATA "100"
    ifNoIFramesMsg CDATA #IMPLIED
    anchorText CDATA "click here"
    proxy (yes | YES | no | NO | 0 | 1) "no"
    auth CDATA #IMPLIED
    handshake (yes | YES | no | NO | 0 | 1) "no"
    handshakeUrl CDATA #IMPLIED
    windowName CDATA #IMPLIED
    showAsButton (yes | YES | no | NO | 0 | 1) "no"
>

<!-- "xmlHref" and "xslHref" can be a URL or a file -->
<!-- "type" is a MIME type of the output generated after applying -->
<!-- XSL transformation to XML data -->
<!-- for example, "type" can be set to "text/plain" or "text/html" -->

<!ELEMENT XmlTranslation ((TextParm*, OptionParm*)*)>
<!ATTLIST XmlTranslation
    xmlHref CDATA #REQUIRED
    xslHref CDATA #REQUIRED
    type CDATA #REQUIRED
>

<!ELEMENT TextParm EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST TextParm
    prompt CDATA #REQUIRED
    name CDATA #REQUIRED
    value CDATA #IMPLIED
>

<!ELEMENT OptionParm (Option+)>
<!ATTLIST OptionParm
    prompt CDATA #REQUIRED
    name CDATA #REQUIRED
    value CDATA #IMPLIED
>

<!ELEMENT Option EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST Option
    name CDATA #REQUIRED
    value CDATA #REQUIRED
>

```


Table 7-3 Generic Element

Element	Description
Submodule	A child element of the Generic element, Submodule contains zero or 1 TitleBar elements, zero or 1 of the following elements: Command, File, or Url; and zero or 1 EmbeddedHtml element.
GlobalParms	A child element of the Generic element, GlobalParms gives you a way to define parameters that apply to all submodules within the Generic module.

Table 7-4 GlobalParms Elements

Element	Description
TextParm	An optional child element of the GlobalParms element. When defined within the GlobalParms element TextParm element defines a parameter that will be applied to all submodules within a generic module. The Portal will provide the UI for an end user to edit this parameter (module must be editable).
OptionParm	An optional child element of the GlobalParms element. OptionParm element defines an option parameter that will be applied to all submodules within a generic module. The option parameter is a parameter with predefined values (options) that a user can choose from. The Portal will provide the UI for a user to choose the value of this parameter from the drop-down list (module must be editable). OptionParm element must contain at least one Option element.

Table 7-5 Submodule Elements

Element	Description
TitleBar	An optional child element of the Submodule element, TitleBar displays a gray titlebar at the beginning of a Submodule. A Submodule can have one TitleBar.

Table 7-5 Submodule Elements (Continued)

Element	Description
File	An optional child element of the Submodule element, File imports a file on your local machine or network. It does not access files that require HTTP access. File can be HTML (text/html) or plain text (text/plain). For more information see “Displaying HTML from an External File” on page 168.
Command	An optional child element of the Submodule element, Command displays the output of any executable command that generates stdout. For more information, see “Displaying the Output from a Command” on page 165. Note that parameter substitution can be used with the Command element, as described in “Giving Your Module Access to SIP Data Through Variable Substitution” on page 177.
Url	An optional child element of the Submodule element, this element displays the content of a URL. Using Url, you can display the contents of a remote file that requires HTTP access, or execute a CGI program. For more information, see “Displaying the Contents of a URL” on page 173.
XmlTranslation	An optional child element of the Submodule element, this element transforms XML data with XSL and displays the results. XML and XSLT files can reside on your local machine or network, or they can be accessed remotely using HTTP. For more information, see “Transforming XML Into a Displayable Format Using XSLT” on page 175.
EmbeddedHtml	An optional element that embeds raw HTML. Can be used by itself or in conjunction with command, file, or URL. If used with one of those, the value of EmbeddedHtml is output after the processing of the command, file, or URL and must be defined in the XML file after the command, file, or URL. For more information, see “Displaying Embedded HTML” on page 171.

Table 7-6 **TitleBar Attributes**

Attributes	Description
title	The name displayed in the submodule title bar (e.g., “Billing” or “Trouble Tickets”). The value can be either simple text or HTML. If HTML is used, characters such as "<" and ">" need to be appropriately escaped according the rules for valid HTML.
titleAnchorUrl	Defines a URL ("http: . . .") to be accessed through the submodule titlebar. The attribute titleAnchorText must also be set in order for this attribute to have an effect.
titleAnchorText	Defines the text to be placed within the anchor tag and displayed in the submodule title bar. The attribute titleAnchorUrl must also be set for this to have an effect.
status	Status text to be displayed on the right-hand side in the submodule title. The value can be either simple text or HTML.
statusImageUrl	Defines a URL ("http: . . .") of an image to display right justified in the submodule title bar.
statusImageAltText	Defines alternate text to display for the image.

NOTE For more information on TitleBar, see “Adding Status Text, Graphics, and Links to a Submodule Title” on page 184.

Table 7-7 **Command Attributes and Elements**

Attributes and Elements	Description
commandLine	<p>A required attribute, <code>commandLine</code> defines the command to use with a submodule.</p> <p>Example: <code>"commandLine="/usr/sbin/ping hostname 10"</code></p> <p>Optional arguments to a command can be placed as part of the <code>commandLine</code> attribute. If the value of <code>commandLine</code> contains one of the following, the command referenced by the attribute has the option of using this argument to determine a user context:</p> <p><code>\$\$SIP_HOME_DIR</code> <code>\$OVLOGIN</code> <code>\$OVROLE</code></p> <p>For more information on substitution, see “Giving Your Module Access to SIP Data Through Variable Substitution” on page 177.</p> <p>Be careful when presenting the results of a command. A command is executed as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Windows 2000</i>: the local "System" account • <i>HP-UX</i>: <code>www/www</code> • <i>Solaris</i>: <code>nobody/nogroup</code> <p>Make sure that only knowledgeable personnel implement this feature.</p>

Table 7-7 Command Attributes and Elements (Continued)

Attributes and Elements	Description
type	<p>An attribute that indicates what type of output a command will generate based on standard MIME types. There are two values for this enumerated type:</p> <p>text/plain: The output from the command is pure ASCII text. In this mode, the Generic module will prefix the command's output with the HTML tag <code><pre></code> and will append the HTML tag <code></pre></code> after the command completes. This wrapping is necessary to support non-HTML output.</p> <p>text/html: The output from the command contains HTML text. No wrapping of the output is performed.</p>
expires	<p>An attribute that indicates the number of minutes the results of command execution are valid. The results of running a command are cached if <code>expires</code> is greater than 0 minutes. The cached results will be used the next time the same command is processed until the number of minutes specified in <code>expires</code> has elapsed. When the number of minutes has elapsed, the Generic module will reinvoke the command instead of using previous cache. The default is 0 minutes, meaning that no caching is performed and the command is always executed.</p>

Table 7-7 Command Attributes and Elements (Continued)

Attributes and Elements	Description
stripHtmlHeader	<p>An attribute that is used when the value of <code>type</code> equals "text/html". This attribute can be set to <code>yes</code> in order to display just the contents of the HTML <code><body></code> tag. All HTML header information from the command is removed from the output stream. This attribute may need to be set if the referenced command will generate an entire valid HTML document including HTML header information. It may not be valid to return more than one set of HTML header tags to the browser. It is important to remove the additional tags from the referenced command. The default value of this attribute is <code>no</code>. Possible values: <code>yes</code> <code>YES</code> <code>no</code> <code>NO</code> <code>0</code> <code>1</code>.</p> <p>Output from the portal generates a complete HTML document including <code><Html></code>, <code><Head></code>, and <code><Body></code> tags. If the output of your command generates its own <code><Html></code>, <code><Head></code>, and <code><Body></code> tags, you will have more than one each of the <code><Html></code>, <code><Head></code>, and <code><Body></code> tags. If this is the case, set <code>stripHtmlHeader</code> to "yes."</p> <p>The default is set to "no" to allow the functioning of any potential scripts that you have placed in the <code><Head></code> tag. Be aware that a document containing multiple <code><Html></code>, <code><Head></code>, and <code><Body></code> tags may cause unpredictable behavior in the browser. If a problem arises that you suspect is related to header data, change <code>StripHtmlHeader</code> to "yes."</p>
TextParm	<p>The optional child element of <code>File</code>, <code>Command</code>, <code>Url</code>, or <code>XmlTranslation</code> elements. <code>TextParm</code> element defines a parameter that can be used in <code>fileName</code>, <code>commandLine</code>, <code>href</code>, or <code>auth</code> attribute. The Portal will provide the UI for an end user to edit this parameter (module must be editable).</p>

Table 7-7 Command Attributes and Elements (Continued)

Attributes and Elements	Description
OptionParm	The optional child element of File, Command, Url, or XmlTranslation elements. OptionParm element defines an option parameter that can be used in fileName, commandLine, href, or auth attribute. The option parameter is a parameter with predefined values (options) that a user can choose from. The Portal will provide the UI for a user to choose the value of this parameter from the drop-down list (module must be editable). OptionParm element must contain at least one Option element.

Table 7-8 File Attributes

Attributes	Description
fileName	<p>A required attribute, fileName defines the file that can be accessed and displayed. The file needs to reside on the same system or be accessible through the network. The file path can be absolute (starting from the root directory) or you can use \$SIP_HOME_DIR to reference files relative to the SIP installation directory.</p> <p>Example: fileName="/tmp/file.html"</p> <p>You can take advantage of a portal user context if the value of fileName contains one of the following:</p> <p>\$SIP_HOME_DIR \$OVLOGIN \$OVROLE</p> <p>For more information on substitution, see “Giving Your Module Access to SIP Data Through Variable Substitution” on page 177.</p>

Table 7-8 **File Attributes (Continued)**

Attributes	Description
type	<p>Indicates the type of file. There are two values for this attribute:</p> <p>text/plain: The file content is pure ASCII text. In this mode, the Generic module will prefix the file content with the HTML tag <pre> and will append the HTML tag </pre> after the file content. This wrapping is necessary to support non-HTML files.</p> <p>text/html: The file contains HTML text. No wrapping of the content is performed.</p>
displayFileInfo	<p>This attribute can be set to “yes” in order to display the full path to the file and the time when the file was last modified in the browser. This information will precede the file content. The default value for this attribute is “no.” The default is not to display the full path name or modification time.</p>

Table 7-8 File Attributes (Continued)

Attributes	Description
stripHtmlHeader	<p>This attribute is used to strip the <Head></Head> contents before displaying a file. This is useful if the imported file contains a <Head> section and the client browser cannot handle the reception of multiple <Head> elements (one from the portal and one from the file).</p> <p>When the value of <code>type</code> equals “text/html”, this attribute can be set to “yes” to display just the contents of the HTML <body> tag. All HTML header information from the file will be removed from the output stream. This attribute may need to be set if the referenced file contains an entire valid HTML document including HTML header information. It may not be valid to return more than one set of HTML header tags to the browser. It is important to remove the additional tags from the referenced file. The default value of this attribute is “no.” Possible values: <code>yes</code> <code>YES</code> <code>no</code> <code>NO</code> <code>0</code> <code>1</code>.</p> <p>Output from the portal generates a complete HTML document including <Html>, <Head>, and <Body> tags. If the output of your command generates its own <Html>, <Head>, and <Body> tags, you will have more than one each of the <Html>, <Head>, and <Body> tags. If this is the case, set <code>stripHtmlHeader</code> to “yes.”</p> <p>The default is set to “no” to allow the functioning of any potential scripts that you have placed in the <Head> tag. Be aware that a document containing multiple <Html>, <Head>, and <Body> tags may cause unpredictable behavior in the browser. If a problem arises that you suspect is related to header data, change <code>StripHtmlHeader</code> to “yes.”</p>
encoding	<p>This attribute indicates the character set the file is encoded in. The default value is “UTF-8”. Change the default value if the file uses non-ASCII characters.</p>

Table 7-8 File Attributes (Continued)

Attributes	Description
TextParm	The optional child element of File, Command, Url, or XmlTranslation elements. TextParm element defines a parameter that can be used in fileName, commandLine, href, or auth attribute. The Portal will provide the UI for an end user to edit this parameter (module must be editable).
OptionParm	The optional child element of File, Command, Url, or XmlTranslation elements. OptionParm element defines an option parameter that can be used in fileName, commandLine, href, or auth attribute. The option parameter is a parameter with predefined values (options) that a user can choose from. The Portal will provide the UI for a user to choose the value of this parameter from the drop-down list (module must be editable). OptionParm element must contain at least one Option element.

Table 7-9 Url Attributes

Attributes	Description
href	<p>A required attribute that defines the URL to use with this submodule.</p> <p>Examples: href="http://www.hp.com"</p> <p>Optional arguments to a URL can be placed as part of the href attribute. If the value of href contains one of the following, the URL referenced by the attribute has the option of using this argument to determine a user context for the URL:</p> <p>\$SIP_HOME_DIR \$OVLOGIN \$OVROLE</p> <p>The default setting for port is 80, and the default protocol is http. These are configurable through the URL specified as the href for the module default XML file or the module instance.</p> <p>For more information on substitution, see “Giving Your Module Access to SIP Data Through Variable Substitution” on page 177.</p>
displayMethod	<p>A required attribute that can be set to either inline, anchor or embedded.</p> <p>The inline value indicates to SIP that <IFRAME> tags should be used. If you set the attribute to inline and the browser does not support inline frames, the browser will ignore the <IFRAME> tags and instead present a standard <A> tag. Browsers other than IE, including all Netscape browsers prior to version 6.0, do not support the <IFRAME> tag.</p> <p>The anchor value tells the portal to display only a link to the specified URL.</p> <p>The embedded value tells the portal to access the specified URL and embed (display) its content into the submodule.</p>

Table 7-9 **Url Attributes (Continued)**

Attributes	Description
inlineHeight	This attribute applies only if <code>displayMethod="inline"</code> . It specifies the height, in pixels, that will be provided for an inline frame. If not supplied, the default is 100 pixels.
ifNoIFramesMsg	This attribute applies only if <code>displayMethod="inline"</code> . If the client browser does not support inline frames, this text will be the name of the link.
anchorText	This attribute indicates the text to display on browsers that do not support the <code><IFRAME></code> tag, such as versions of Netscape that are earlier than 6.0, or when <code>displayMethod</code> is <code>anchor</code> . Represents the text to display for a resulting HTML <code><A></code> anchor tag. The default value is "click here".
proxy	<p>An attribute that indicates whether SIP should proxy the data from the specified URL. If <code>proxy="no"</code>, then the end user's browser will fetch data from the specified location. The data should be accessible to the end user. For example, set <code>proxy</code> to "no" when displaying user <code>myYahoo</code> account.</p> <p>If "proxy" equals "yes" then the SIP server will fetch data from the specified location using HTTP request. This allows the SIP server to directly communicate with another server (data source) over a secured network. Use this method to access data that are not visible to the end user, for example Concord or NNM reports.</p> <p>If <code>displayMethod="embedded"</code>, then <code>proxy</code> is assumed to be "yes."</p> <p>The default value of "proxy" attribute is "no". Possible values are: yes, no, YES, NO, 0, 1</p>

Table 7-9 Url Attributes (Continued)

Attributes	Description
auth	<p>This attribute is used if proxy equals “yes.”</p> <p>If proxy is enabled, then the auth attribute is valid; and</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If loginUrl IS NOT set, web server authentication is performed, and the “auth” attribute specifies the name and password that will be used by the SIP server when accessing the protected data. • If loginUrl IS set, login page authentication is performed. <p>The syntax of “auth” for web server authentication requires that name and password are separated by a colon. For example, auth="name:password"</p> <p>For information on the syntax of the auth string for login page authentication, see “Login Page Authentication” on page 177.</p> <p>For an example of a module that uses login page authentication, see the Service Desk module:</p> <p>OVDefaultServiceDesk4.xml</p> <p>Default module XML files are located in the following directory:</p> <p><i>Windows 2000:</i> %SIP_HOME%\registration\defaults <i>UNIX:</i> /opt/OV/SIP/registration/defaults</p>

Table 7-9 **Url Attributes (Continued)**

Attributes	Description
loginUrl	<p>This optional attribute represents a URL to a login page. When this is set, and the auth attribute is set, the Generic module will invoke the loginUrl with an HTTP POST, sending the auth string as parameters. In this context, the “auth” string contains URL parameters rather than a simple “user:password” string as with web server authentication. The cookies returned by the web server are set when proxying the target URL specified in the href attribute. These cookies are also saved on the session and used for subsequent invocations of that URL (or its child links).</p> <p>If proxy is enabled, then the auth attribute is valid; and</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If loginUrl IS NOT set, web server authentication is performed. • If loginUrl IS set, login page authentication is performed.
handshake	<p>This attribute indicates whether the generic module should initiate a handshake with a website. If handshake is set to “yes” then a handshake is initiated, that is, the handshakeUrl is accessed. If any cookie is available in the response, the cookie is used when making succeeding requests to the website. Handshake only works for web server authentication.</p>
handshakeUrl	<p>This attribute specifies the URL for the website from which the generic module will send and receive data. The handshake attribute must be set to “yes”.</p>
windowName	<p>This attribute specifies the name of the window into which the content should be displayed.</p>
showAsButton	<p>This attribute applies only if displayMethod="anchor". If showAsButton equals "yes", the link will be shown as a button on the bottom of the module rather than a link. The default value is "no."</p>

Table 7-9 Url Attributes (Continued)

Attributes	Description
TextParm	The optional child element of File, Command, Url, or XmlTranslation elements. TextParm element defines a parameter that can be used in fileName, commandLine, href, or auth attribute. The Portal will provide the UI for an end user to edit this parameter (module must be editable).
OptionParm	The optional child element of File, Command, Url, or XmlTranslation elements. OptionParm element defines an option parameter that can be used in fileName, commandLine, href, or auth attribute. The option parameter is a parameter with predefined values (options) that a user can choose from. The Portal will provide the UI for a user to choose the value of this parameter from the drop-down list (module must be editable). OptionParm element must contain at least one Option element.

Table 7-10 EmbeddedHtml Attributes

Attributes	Description
data	The value of this attribute contains HTML for output constrained by the conventions outlined in “Rules for Embedded HTML” on page 171.

Table 7-11 **XmlTranslation Attributes**

Attributes	Description
xmlHref	<p>A required attribute, xmlHref defines the XML data to display through the submodule. This value can be a URL or a file. Use URL if the XML data is on the same system or accessible through the network. The file path can be absolute (starting from the root directory). Alternatively, you can use \$SIP_HOME_DIR to reference files relative to the SIP installation directory.</p> <p>Examples: xmlHref="http://machine.corp.com/myData.xml " xmlHref="C:/temp/myData.xml "</p> <p>You can take advantage of a user portal context if the value of xmlHref contains one of the following:</p> <p>\$SIP_HOME_DIR \$OVLOGIN \$OVROLE</p> <p>For more information on substitution, see “Giving Your Module Access to SIP Data Through Variable Substitution” on page 177.</p>

Table 7-11 XmlTranslation Attributes (Continued)

Attributes	Description
xslHref	<p>A required attribute, xslHref defines the XSL transformation to use to display data in the submodule. The XML data specified by xslHref is transformed by XSLT in the xslHref attribute and the resulting output is displayed in the portal.</p> <p>The value of xslHref can be a URL or a file. Use URL if the XSLT resides on a different server. Simply use the file path if the XSLT is on the same system or accessible through the network. The file path can be absolute (starting from the root directory). Alternatively, you can use \$SIP_HOME_DIR to reference files relative to the SIP installation directory.</p> <p>Examples: xslHref="http://machine.corp.com/topPerformersOfTheDay.xsl" xslHref="C:/transformations/topPerformersOfTheDay.xml"</p> <p>You can take advantage of a user portal context if the value of xslHref contains one of the following:</p> <p>\$SIP_HOME_DIR \$OVLOGIN \$OVROLE</p> <p>For more information on substitution, see “Giving Your Module Access to SIP Data Through Variable Substitution” on page 177.</p>
type	<p>A required attribute, type is a MIME type of the output generated after applying an XSL transformation to XML data. For example, type can be set to text/plain or text/html.</p>

Table 7-12 **TextParm Attributes**

Attributes	Description
prompt	<p>A required attribute. Specifies the prompt for the parameter entry. Prompt will be displayed during parameter editing and it should clearly identify the parameter for a user.</p> <p>For example, prompt="Host name:" prompt="Enter name of NNM station:"</p> <p>For more information on parameter editing, see “Adding an Edit GUI to Your Module” on page 183.</p>
name	<p>The required attribute. The name of the parameter. This name preceded by the dollar sign \$ can be used in fileName, commandLine, href, or auth attribute. The SIP portal will replace this \$name by the parameter value before accessing the file or the URL or executing the command.</p>
value	<p>The default value of the parameter. The parameter (\$name) in fileName, href or commandLine will be replaced by this value (the value of the value attribute) before accessing the file or the URL or executing the command.</p>

Table 7-13 **OptionParm Attributes**

Attributes	Description
prompt	<p>The required attribute. The prompt for the parameter entry. Prompt will be displayed during parameter editing and it should clearly identify the parameter for a user.</p> <p>For example, prompt="Host name:" prompt="Choose name of NNM station:"</p> <p>For more information on parameter editing, see “Adding an Edit GUI to Your Module” on page 183.</p>

Table 7-13 OptionParm Attributes (Continued)

Attributes	Description
name	The required attribute. The name of the parameter. This name preceded by the dollar sign \$ can be used in <code>fileName</code> , <code>commandLine</code> , <code>href</code> , or <code>auth</code> attribute. The SIP portal will replace this \$name by the parameter value before accessing the file or the URL or executing the command.
value	<p>The name of a default option. The name of an option that define the default value of the parameter. The option with this name must be defined i.e. <code>Option</code> element with this name must be contained in this <code>OptionParm</code> element.</p> <p>The parameter (\$name) in <code>fileName</code>, <code>commandLine</code>, <code>href</code>, or <code>auth</code> will be replaced by the value of this option before accessing the file or the URL or executing the command.</p>
Option	A child element of <code>OptionParm</code> element. The <code>Option</code> element defines one of options for the parameter, that is, one of the values that the parameter can take. There must be at least one <code>Option</code> element defined (contained in) for an <code>OptionParm</code> element.

Table 7-14 Option Attributes

Attributes	Description
name	A required attribute of the <code>Option</code> element, specifies the name of the option. This name will be displayed in the drop-down selection list to identify the option.
value	A required attribute of the <code>Option</code> element, specifies the default value of the option. If the parameter has this option value (that is, if the option is selected), the parameter in <code>fileName</code> , <code>href</code> , or <code>commandLine</code> will be replaced by this value (the value of the <code>value</code> attribute) before accessing the file or URL or executing the command.

Developing Portal Content

Developing Modules that Integrate Your Own Applications and Data

Understanding Customer-to-Resource Mappings

Segmenting data by customer organization requires the use of a customer model: a mapping of customer organizations to their resources. Table 8-1 shows which management software integrates with supplied modules that:

- Use the SIP customer model
- Use their own customer model
- Do no data filtering.

Table 8-1 The Use of a Customer Model by Supplied Modules

Management Software or Module	Modules Use the SIP Customer Model	Modules Use Their Own Customer Model	Modules Do No Filtering of Management Data
Network Node Manager (NNM)	X		
OpenView Internet Services (OVIS)		X	
OpenView Reporter (OVR)	X		
OpenView Operations (OVO) and OpenView Service Navigator (OVSN)	X		
OpenView Service Desk (OVSD)		X	
OpenView Performance Insight (OVPI)		X	
Message Board module			X
Bookmarks module			X

Using the SIP Customer Model

Several of the OpenView integrations supplied with SIP can filter management data by customer organization, using the SIP customer model.

The SIP customer model is constructed from multiple registered sources that are either XML files or programs that generate XML. The XML must be based on the SIP Simple Customer Model (SCM), which maps *organizations* to *nodes*, *interfaces*, *non-NNM-discovered objects* (for topology maps) and *services*, and is defined in an XML DTD. Creating the customer model sources means getting customer-to-resource mappings into a format that conforms to the DTD so they can be used by SIP.

Customer model sources are defined in several XML files, or in a mix of CGIs, servlets, and XML files that you must register with SIP. SIP merges these sources, or “sub-models” into one fully-integrated customer model.

Summary of the Process of Implementing a SIP Customer Model

Three tasks (explained in the following sections) are required when setting up customer-to-resource mappings and making them available to SIP:

1. Create the SIP customer model, which is defined in several XML files or a mix of programs and files, each called a customer model source.
2. Register all sources of the customer model with SIP.
3. Verify that the correct data is being displayed.

Using an External Customer Model

For products that have their own customer model that is maintained by the management product, such as OVSD, OVPI, and OVIS, SIP takes advantage of the external customer model via special properties that can be defined for a role. To display segmented data from these products, you do not create customer model sources or a management data filter per se. Instead, you define role properties that map a SIP role to a customer organization and its resources. To learn how to create valid role properties, read the SIP manuals that document the integration of these management products.

Creating a SIP Customer Model

The SIP customer model is defined in several XML files or a mix of programs and files, each called a customer model source.

Creating Customer Model Sources

A customer model source can define any number of organizations, service lists, node lists, topology map object (non-NNM-discovered nodes) lists, and interface lists, including none at all. Furthermore, the organizations and resource lists can be defined in any order within an XML file.

You have a lot of flexibility in how you go about creating the customer model sources, but you must do two main tasks:

- Create lists of resources
- Map organizations to their resources

The task of mapping organizations to resources is described in the next section “Mapping Organizations to Their Resources” on page 217.

The task of creating lists of resources is described in the SIP manuals that cover the individual management product integrations.

What You Should Know About Customer Model Sources

- A customer model source can be an XML file that you create from scratch that does the following:
 - Maps organizations to their resources, either by listing the resources directly in the file, or by referencing lists of resources.
For detailed information on mapping organizations to their resources, see “Mapping Organizations to Their Resources” on page 217.
 - Lists the resources without any association to organizations.
For detailed information on creating lists of nodes, interfaces, topology map objects (non-NNM-discovered nodes), and services that can be associated with organizations, see the following:
 - *HP OpenView Operations and Service Navigator Integration with SIP* (OVO_and_OVSN_Integration.pdf).

— *NNM Integration with SIP* (NNM_Integration.pdf)

- A customer model source can be a supplied program, such as `getcvdata.exe` and the `NNMSimpleCustomerModel` servlet.

Use `getcvdata.exe` if you have Customer Views for NNM and you want to leverage the Customer Views organizations-to-resource mappings in the SIP customer model.

Use the `NNMSimpleCustomerModel` servlet to retrieve filtered information from the NNM object database (`ovwdb`) and automatically generate lists of nodes and interfaces.

For detailed information, see *Network Node Manager Integration with SIP* (NNM_Integration.pdf).

- A customer model source can be a program that you create yourself that provides a mapping from an arbitrary data store or provisioning system to the required “simple customer model” format.

Use this approach if you want to write a program that converts data from an existing data source into the required XML format for the SIP customer model. For information on developing your own customer model data source, see “Developing a Custom Customer Model Source” on page 220.

Mapping Organizations to Their Resources

In order to display management data in SIP that is segmented by customer, at least one of the customer model source files must contain associations between organizations and their resources.

This procedure assumes that you have already created your resource lists, as described in *HP OpenView Operations and Service Navigator Integration with SIP* (OVO_and_OVSN_Integration.pdf) and *NNM Integration with SIP* (NNM_Integration.pdf).

1. Create an XML file based on the `SimpleCustomerModel.dtd`. The easiest way is to copy and rename an existing one, such as `CustomerModel.xml` that is supplied with SIP:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\organizations\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/organizations/

Within the XML file, the path to the `SimpleCustomerModel.dtd` in the DOCTYPE statement must correctly reference the location of DTD. SIP assumes that your customer model source XML files are in

Creating a SIP Customer Model

the `/conf/share/organizations` directory. You can reference the Simple Customer Model DTD locally or remotely using the following URL examples, respectively:

```
<!DOCTYPE SimpleCustomerModel SYSTEM "SimpleCustomerModel.dtd">
```

```
<!DOCTYPE SimpleCustomerModel SYSTEM
"http://<SIP_Server>/ovportal/servlet/DTDServer/conf/share/organizations/SimpleC
ustomerModel.dtd">
```

2. Using an ASCII or XML editor, open the file and create mappings that associate an organization with its resources. For examples, see Figure 8-1 on page 218 and Figure 8-2 on page 219.

3. Save the XML file into the `organizations` directory.

SIP interprets relative paths relative to the `organizations` directory.

4. Register this file as a source of customer model data. For detailed instructions, see “Registering SIP Customer Model Sources” on page 232.

Figure 8-1 Sample Customer Model Source That Maps Organizations to Resources by Listing Resources Directly in the File

```
<!DOCTYPE SimpleCustomerModel SYSTEM "SimpleCustomerModel.dtd">
<SimpleCustomerModel>
  <Organization type="customer" name="Cust1">
    <NodeList>
      <Node name="cisco4k2.cnd.hp.com"/>
      <Node name="15.2.3.23"/>
      <Node type="ov-iphost" name="cisco2522"/>
    </NodeList>
    <InterfaceList>
      <Interface name="15.0.2.33"/>
      <Interface type="ov-ipv4" name="15.2.3.23"/>
      <Interface type="ov-vpn4" name="10.2.1.1/3434"/>
    </InterfaceList>
    <TopomapObjectList>
      <TopomapObject type="Selection Name" name="Key Resources"/>
    </TopomapObjectList>
  </Organization>
  <Organization type="customer" name="Cust2">
    <ServiceList>
```

```
    <Service type="webHosting" name="Cust2WebHosting" />
    <Service type="mail" name="Cust2Mail" />
    <Service type="news" name="Cust2News">
      <Depth>2</Depth></Service>
  </ServiceList>
  <NodeListRef href="WebServers" />
</Organization>
<Organization type="customer" name="VIC1">
  <ServiceLevel>Gold</ServiceLevel>
  <ExternalKey>vic-1001</ExternalKey>
</Organization>
<Organization type="provider" name="PeerISP1" />
  <NodeList name="WebServers">
    <Node name="www.cnd.hp.com" />
    <Node name="web.fc.hp.com" />
  </NodeList>
</SimpleCustomerModel>
```

Figure 8-2 Sample Customer Model Source That Maps Organizations to Resources by Referencing Lists of Resources

```
<!DOCTYPE SimpleCustomerModel SYSTEM "SimpleCustomerModel.dtd">
<SimpleCustomerModel>
  <Organization type="customer" name="Cust1">
    <NodeListRef href="List1" />
    <InterfaceListRef href="List2" />
    <TopomapObjectListRef href="List3" />
  </Organization>
  <Organization type="customer" name="Cust2">
    <ServiceListRef href="List4" />
  </Organization>
</SimpleCustomerModel>
```

Figure 8-3 Sample Customer Model Source That Contains Lists of Resources Only

```
<!DOCTYPE SimpleCustomerModel SYSTEM "SimpleCustomerModel.dtd">
<SimpleCustomerModel>
  <NodeList name="List1">
    <Node name="cisco4k2.cnd.hp.com" />
    <Node name="15.2.3.23" />
    <Node type="ov-iphost" name="cisco2522" />
  </NodeList>
</SimpleCustomerModel>
```

Creating a SIP Customer Model

```

    <Node type="ISPNews.cnd.hp.com" name="ov-iphost" />
    <Node type="ISPGlobalNet.ispl.com" name="ov-iphost" />
</NodeList>
<InterfaceList name="List2">
  <Interface name="15.0.2.33" />
  <Interface type="ov-ipv4" name="15.2.3.23" />
  <Interface type="ov-vpn4" name="10.2.1.1/3434" />
  <Interface type="15.40.10.2" name="ov-ipv4" />
</InterfaceList>
<TopomapObjectList name="List3">
  <TopomapObject type="Selection Name" name="Western Region" />
  <TopomapObject type="Selection Name" name="Eastern Region" />
</TopomapObjectList>
<ServiceList name="List4">
  <Service type="webHosting" name="Cust2WebHosting" />
  <Service type="mail" name="Cust2Mail" />
  <Service type="news" name="Cust2News">
    <Depth>2</Depth></Service>
</ServiceList>
</SimpleCustomerModel>

```

Developing a Custom Customer Model Source

You can develop a program that provides a mapping from an arbitrary data store or provisioning system to the required SIP customer model format. SIP is capable of receiving content for the customer model from any source that can produce XML content that adheres to the SIP customer model DTD.

SIP can be configured to read data from a local file, or any arbitrary URL that is accessible from the SIP server. The URL can be a servlet, CGI, or other technology that returns XML content via HTTP.

For example, assume that you maintain a database of customers and their related managed resources. A perl CGI script named `getMyCustomerData.pl` could be written and installed on a web server, `customerdb.generic.net`. Suppose the URL to that script is `"http://customerdb.generic.net/cgi-bin/getMyCustomerData.pl"`, you could add the URL as a Customer Model Source in the `OVPportalConfig.xml` file as follows:

```

<CustomerModelSources>
  <CustomerModel
    href="http://customerdb.generic.net/cgi-bin/getMyCustomerData.pl" />
</CustomerModelSources>

```

The perl cgi script could contain some code similar to this:

```
#!/usr/local/bin/perl

print "content-type: text/xml\n\n";
print "<?xml version=\"1.0\" encoding=\"UTF-8\" ?>\n";
print "<!DOCTYPE SimpleCustomerModel PUBLIC \"SimpleCustomerModel\"
\"http://server.co.com/ovportal/servlet/DTDServer/conf/share/organizations/Simpl
eCustomerModel.dtd\">\n\n";

print "content-type: text/xml\n\n";
print "<SimpleCustomerModel>";
@orgs = getOrganizationsFromDb();
foreach org (@orgs) {
    print "<Organization name=\"$org\">"
        outputOrganizationData($org);
    print "</Organization>"
}
print "</SimpleCustomerModel>\n";
```

Your perl CGI `outputOrganizationData` script could output the customer-to-resource mappings wrapped in XML code required by SIP.

Of course this could be written in any language using a technology that is capable of returning XML via HTTP. Parameters may be specified in the URL as well. For example, you could invoke this perl script differently from multiple SIP servers as follows:

Figure 8-4 OVPortalConfig.xml on SIP server1

```
<CustomerModelSources>
  <CustomerModel
    href="http://customerdb.generic.net/cgi-bin/getMyCustomerData.pl?server=one"/>
</CustomerModelSources>
```

Figure 8-5 OVPortalConfig.xml on SIP server2

```
<CustomerModelSources>
  <CustomerModel
    href="http://customerdb.generic.net/cgi-bin/getMyCustomerData.pl?server=two"/>
</CustomerModelSources>
```

In this case, the CGI can interpret the parameters and return different content to each server. As stated previously, this content must conform to the DTD defined in `SimpleCustomerModel.dtd` file. The DTD provides a mechanism for remote reporting of errors. If the CGI encounters an error

Creating a SIP Customer Model

or warning, it can report those along with any Customer Model data, and they will be added to the appropriate SIP log file. For example, the CGI could return:

```
<SimpleCustomerModel>
  <Error msg="The database is currently unavailable"/>
</SimpleCustomermodel>
```

SIP assumes that your customer model source XML files are in the /conf/share/organizations directory. You can reference the Simple Customer Model DTD locally or remotely using the following URL examples, respectively:

```
<!DOCTYPE SimpleCustomerModel SYSTEM "SimpleCustomerModel.dtd">
```

```
<!DOCTYPE SimpleCustomerModel SYSTEM
"http://<SIP_Server>/ovportal/servlet/DTDServer/conf/share/organizations/SimpleC
ustomerModel.dtd">
```

SIP Customer Model DTD

The SimpleCustomerModel.dtd file is located in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\organizations\

UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/organizations/

Table 8-2 SimpleCustomerModel Child Elements

Elements	Descriptions
Organization	The name of a customer, or a logical grouping for segmenting data.
ServiceList	Can be a child element of Organization or specified outside of any Organization. If a child element, ServiceList is a listing of services that are associated with an organization. If specified outside an Organization, it is a listing of services that can be associated with multiple organizations.

Table 8-2 SimpleCustomerModel Child Elements

Elements	Descriptions
NodeList	Can be a child element of Organization or specified outside of any Organization. If a child element, NodeList is a listing of nodes that are associated with an organization. If specified outside an Organization, it is a listing of nodes that can be associated with multiple organizations.
InterfaceList	Can be a child element of Organization or specified outside of any Organization. If a child element, InterfaceList is a listing of interfaces that are associated with an organization. If specified outside an Organization, it is a listing of interfaces that can be associated with multiple organizations.
TopomapObjectList	Can be a child element of Organization or specified outside of any Organization. If a child element, TopomapObjectList is a listing of topology map objects (non-NNM-discovered nodes, such as containers and locations) that are associated with an organization. If specified outside an Organization, it is a listing of topology map objects that can be associated with multiple organizations.

Table 8-3 Organization Attributes and Child Elements

Elements and Attributes	Descriptions
type	An optional attribute that specifies the type of customer or organization. For Customer Views data, this would have values of “customer” and “provider.”
name	A required attribute that specifies a unique name for identifying the organization.
DisplayString	An optional displayable string. If this element is not present, the name attribute is used for display purposes.
ServiceLevel	An optional element that specifies the level of service (e.g., platinum, gold, silver, bronze). In Customer Views, this idea is implicit in groups of customers or organizations.
ExternalKey	An optional element that represents an external database key for the organization. This is provided to migrate the organizationExternalKey attribute stored by Customer Views.

Table 8-4 ServiceList Attributes and Child Elements

Elements and Attributes	Descriptions
name	<p>An optional attribute that specifies a unique name for identifying the ServiceList. The ServiceListRef uses the href attribute to reference a particular ServiceList by name.</p> <p>If multiple ServiceList elements have the same name value, they are viewed as the same list of services and the definitions are merged.</p>
Service	<p>A resource that can be associated with an organization. The named service does not need to contain the definition of the service but provide a way to refer a particular service that is defined elsewhere.</p>
ServiceListRef href	<p>An optional element that can be used to have multiple organizations share the same ServiceList definition. A ServiceList referenced by a ServiceListRef element must be identified by an href attribute.</p>

Table 8-5 Service Attributes and Child Elements

Elements and Attributes	Descriptions
type	<p>An optional attribute that specifies the type of service (for example, “webHosting” and “e-mail.” The type value is an arbitrary string defined by the application or module dealing with the service. It is used to filter on the list of services, so that a module only needs to deal with the services it is concerned with.</p>

Table 8-5 Service Attributes and Child Elements

Elements and Attributes	Descriptions
name	A required attribute that uniquely identifies the service.
DisplayString	An optional displayable string. If this element is not present, the name attribute is used for display purposes.
Depth	An optional element that specifies the number that represents a depth limit for displaying information about the service. This value is used by the HP OpenView Service Navigator modules. A depth value of 0 suggests that all children of the service, and the service itself, are associated with this organization.

Table 8-6 NodeList Attributes and Child Elements

Elements and Attributes	Descriptions
name	<p>An optional attribute that specifies a unique name for identifying the NodeList. The NodeListRef uses the href attribute to reference a particular NodeList by name.</p> <p>If multiple NodeList elements have the same name value, they are viewed as the same list of nodes and the definitions are merged.</p>
Node	A resource that can be associated with an organization.

Table 8-6 NodeList Attributes and Child Elements

Elements and Attributes	Descriptions
NodeListRef href	An optional element that can be used to have multiple organizations share the same NodeList definition. A NodeList referenced by a NodeListRef element must be identified by an href attribute.

Table 8-7 Node Attributes and Child Elements

Elements and Attributes	Descriptions
type	An optional attribute that specifies the type of node name. This is specified for future extensibility. For SIP 2.0, only one value is understood by the modules: "ov-iphost". An "ov-iphost" type of name is a hostname, DNS name, or IP address.
name	A required attribute that uniquely identifies the node. If the type is "ov-iphost", the name value can be an IP hostname, a DNS name, or an IP address.
DisplayString	An optional displayable string. If this element is not present, the name attribute is used for display purposes.

Table 8-8 **InterfaceList Attributes and Child Elements**

Elements and Attributes	Descriptions
name	<p>An optional attribute that specifies a unique name for identifying the InterfaceList. The InterfaceListRef uses the href attribute to reference a particular InterfaceList by name.</p> <p>If multiple InterfaceList elements have the same name value, they are viewed as the same list of interfaces and the definitions are merged.</p>
Interface	<p>A resource that can be associated with an organization.</p>
InterfaceListRef href	<p>An optional element that can be used to have multiple organizations share the same InterfaceList definition. An InterfaceList referenced by an InterfaceListRef element must be identified by an href attribute.</p>

Table 8-9 Interface Attributes and Child Elements

Elements and Attributes	Descriptions
type	<p>Specifies the type or “address family” of the interface.</p> <p>IP-address, or hostname/ifAlias::ifDescr hostname = fully-qualified hostname or IP address ifAlias = from the SNMP IF-MIB (rfc2863) ifDescr = the first word in the SNMP MIB-II (rfc1213) ifDescr string</p> <p>NOTE: Either ifAlias or ifDescr can be empty, but the combination must uniquely identify the interface.</p>
name	<p>A required attribute that uniquely identifies the interface. The format of this attribute’s value is dictated by the value of the "type" attribute.</p>
DisplayString	<p>An optional displayable string. If this element is not present, the name attribute is used for display purposes.</p>

Table 8-10 TopomapObjectList Attribute and Child Element

Elements and Attributes	Descriptions
name	<p>An optional attribute that specifies a unique name for identifying the TopomapObjectList. The TopomapObjectListRef uses the href attribute to reference a particular TopomapObjectList by name.</p> <p>If multiple TopomapObjectList elements have the same name value, they are viewed as the same list of objects and the definitions are merged.</p>
TopomapObject	<p>A resource that can be associated with an organization. The purpose of this element is to provide a way to display and filter non-NNM-discovered objects in the SIP Topology Map module.</p>
TopomapObjectListRef href	<p>An optional element that can be used to have multiple organizations share the same TopomapObjectList definition. A TopomapObjectList referenced by a TopomapObjectListRef element must be identified by an href attribute.</p>

Table 8-11 TopomapObject Attributes

Elements and Attributes	Descriptions
type	<p>An optional attribute that specifies the type of non-NNM-discovered node name. Only one value is understood by the Topology module: "Selection Name".</p>

Table 8-11 TopomapObject Attributes (Continued)

Elements and Attributes	Descriptions
name	A required attribute that uniquely identifies the non-NNM-discovered node. For the name attribute, enter a value from NNM's Selection Name field.

Registering SIP Customer Model Sources

You need to register with SIP the name and location of the sources of the customer model data. This is done through the SIP Administration Pages that are accessed through a special SIP Administrator role.

Registering a Customer Model Source

Customer model sources can be defined in one or more files on the system or can be programmatically generated by CGI programs and servlets. Most likely, the sources to your fully-integrated customer model are a mix of files and programs.

1. Go to the SIP Administration Pages by logging in as a user who can access the special SIP Administrator role. Switch to the SIP Administrator role.
2. Click the Customer Model tab.
3. In the Customer Model Configuration segment, go to Customer Model Sources.
4. In the New customer model source URL field, type a relative file name (relative to the `conf/share/organizations` directory), an absolute file name, or a URL. See examples below:

Figure 8-6 Example of a Relative File Name

```
CustomerModel.xml
```

(Note that the same syntax is used regardless of whether the `conf/share/organizations` directory is local or remote.)

Figure 8-7 Example of an Absolute File Name

```
c:/temp/CustomerModel.xml
```

Figure 8-8 Examples of URLs

```
http://othermachine/CustomerModel.xml  
http://NNMHostname/OvCgi/getcvdata.exe  
http://SIPhostname/ovportal/NNMSimpleCustomerModel
```


5. Click [Add] to add the name of the customer model source to the Customer Model Sources list. The customer model is refreshed automatically, so you do not need to force a refresh by clicking [Refresh].

NOTE

After registering your customer model sources, you can create management data filters that reference one or more customer organizations in the customer model (“Defining/Modifying Management Data Filters” on page 88). After you have created the filters, you can associate each role with a filter (“Assigning a Management Data Filter to a Role” on page 93). At that point you can display segmented management data through SIP modules.

Unregistering a Customer Model Source

To verify the data from a customer model source before you unregister it, see “Viewing a Report of One Customer Model Source” on page 238.

1. Go to the SIP Administration Pages by logging in as a user who can access the special Administrator role. Switch to the Administrator role.
2. Click the Customer Model tab.
3. In the Customer Model Configuration segment, go to Customer Model Sources.
4. In the Customer Model Sources list, select a customer model source and click [Delete].

Verifying That the Correct Data is Being Displayed

The Managed Resources module provides a view of the customer model as filtered by the management data filter. It shows you exactly what data is passing the management data filter that is associated with the current role.

The Managed Resources module displays a list of organizations that are associated with the role. It also displays lists of nodes, interfaces, and services associated with each organization.

1. Log in to SIP and switch to the role for which you want to verify data.
2. Go to the drop-down list box at the bottom of a portal tab column.
3. Select the `Managed Resources` module and click `[Add]`.
4. Look at the organization and resource data to verify that the correct data is being displayed to this role.
5. When you are finished, if appropriate, delete the module from the portal view by clicking the `[X]` button on the module title bar.

Configuring the Managed Resources Module

There are several elements and attributes of the Managed Resources module that can be configured on a per-view basis through direct editing of the XML.

- `FilteredResources details` - Indicates whether the attributes of individual resources should be displayed or not. The default value is “yes.”
- `ListIfAll` - For organizations and each type of resource, in the case where all are allowed, this indicates whether the list is fully enumerated or a string is displayed, for example “All Organizations” or “All Nodes” and so forth. If this element is not present, the union of resources for all the allowed organizations will be shown.
- `DisplayByOrg` - Indicates whether to group the resources that pass the filter by the organization they are associated with.

- `type` - A Perl 5 regular expression for filtering resources by their `type` field in the customer model definition.
- `OrganizationFilter`, `NodeSelection`, and `InterfaceSelection` - These elements can be used to determine which resources the various “display filters” allow. After testing the display filter here, it can be copied to the module instance where it will be used.

NOTE

A second level of management data filtering (sometime called display filtering) is allowed by some of the modules. This type of filtering is optional and allows you can refine the data on a module-by-module basis. To set up filtering at this level, see the SIP manuals that document the integration of individual management products.

To Configure the Managed Resources Module

For examples of variously configured Managed Resource modules, see:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\samples\views\resources.xml

UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/samples/views/resources.xml

1. Make a backup of the portal view XML file before you modify it.
2. Using an ASCII editor, open the portal view file that contains the Managed Resources module that you want to modify.
3. In the XML file, find the Managed Resources module by searching for “FilteredResources”.
4. Make the desired changes.
5. Save the file.
6. After you make modifications to the XML file, validate the syntax. For more information, see “Validating XML Files” on page 309.

Configuring Refresh Rates for the SIP Customer Model

From the Customer Model tab in the SIP Administration Pages, you can force a refresh of the customer model, configure the refresh rate, and configure the refresh rate of information coming from the NNM object database.

Refreshing the Customer Model

You can force a refresh of the customer model. This can be particularly useful if, for example, you are working on a customer model source and want to immediately update the customer model with your changes.

1. Go to the SIP Administration Pages by logging in as a user who can access the SIP Administrator role.
2. Click the Customer Model tab.
3. In the Customer Model Configuration segment, go to Refresh Rates.
4. Click the [Refresh] button.

Configuring the Refresh Rate for the Customer Model

The customer model is loaded the first time it is referenced by SIP and each defined refresh period after that. The refresh rate specifies how often, in minutes, you want the customer model to be refreshed.

1. Go to the SIP Administration Pages by logging in as a user who can access the SIP Administrator role.
2. Click the Customer Model tab.
3. In the Customer Model Configuration segment, go to Refresh Rates.
4. Type the number of minutes you want between automatic refreshes to the customer model. If the value is "0", the customer model will only be loaded when the servlet engine is restarted, or when you click [Refresh].

5. If one of your customer data sources is retrieving filtered information from the NNM object database (ovwdb), type the number of minutes you want between automatic refreshes of the object capabilities.
6. Save the refresh rate by clicking [Apply] at the bottom of the portal page.

Viewing Reports of the SIP Customer Model

Through the *SIP Administration Pages* you can view a report of one customer model source or of the fully-integrated customer model.

Viewing a Report of One Customer Model Source

This report shows the contribution to the fully-integrated customer model made by a particular source.

1. Go to the *SIP Administration Pages* by logging in as a user who can access the special *SIP Administrator* role. Switch to the *SIP Administrator* role.
2. Click the *Customer Model* tab.
3. Go to the *Customer Model Sources* segment of the *Customer Model* tab, select a source, and click [Report].

Viewing a Report of the Fully-Integrated Customer Model

The *Customer Model Summary Report* displays the fully-integrated customer model, which is composed of the data from all customer model sources. You can choose to see the customer model for all organizations or for one particular organization. If an organization has contributions from several sources, this report shows the fully-integrated organization data from all sources.

1. Go to the *SIP Administration Pages* by logging in as a user who can access the special *SIP Administrator* role. Switch to the *SIP Administrator* role.
2. Click the *Customer Model* tab.
3. Go to the *Customer Model Summary Report* segment, select one organization or all organizations.
4. Choose report options.
5. Click [View].

Exporting the SIP Customer Model

You can configure a list of destinations to which the customer model is sent every time it is reloaded (refreshed). The destinations can be file names or URLs, and URLs can be CGI programs or servlets that do something appropriate with the SIP customer model, such as updating a database for use in generating customer-segmented reports.

Registering a Customer Model Export Destination

1. In the `New customer model destinations URL` field, type a relative file name (relative to the `/conf/share/organizations` directory), an absolute file name, or a URL.

Syntax rules that apply to the entry of new customer model sources also apply to new customer model export destinations. For examples, see

2. Click `[Add]` to add the name of the export destination to the `Customer model export destination list`. The export destinations are refreshed automatically, so you do not need to force a refresh by clicking `[Refresh]`.

Figure 8-9 Example of a Relative File Name

```
ExportModel.xml
```

(Note that the same syntax is used regardless of whether the `conf/share/organizations` directory is local or remote.)

Figure 8-10 Example of an Absolute File Name

```
c:/temp/ExportModel.xml
```

Figure 8-11 Examples of URLs

```
http://<OVR-Server>/HPOV_IOPS/cgi-bin/repimport.exe  
http://<NNM_Server>/OvCgi/ovsipexport.exe
```

Removing a Customer Model Export Destination

1. Go to the SIP Administration Pages by logging in as a user who can access the special SIP Administrator role. Switch to the SIP Administrator role.
2. Click the Customer Model tab.
3. In the Customer Model Configuration segment, go to Customer Model Export.
4. In the Customer Model export destinations list, select an export destination and click [Delete].

9 **Configuring Authentication**

Introduction to Supplied Authentication Providers

SIP comes with six ready-to-use authentication providers. By default, the No Password Authentication Provider is registered with SIP. If you want to use one of the other five, you will need to do the following:

- Choose one of the supplied authentication providers.
- For some authentication providers, complete the configuration tasks.
- Register the authentication provider with SIP.

If none of these meets your needs, you may need to integrate a custom authentication provider. (See “Developing a Custom Authentication Provider” on page 258.)

Choosing and Configuring an Authentication Provider

SIP comes with six ready-to-use authentication providers. By default, the No-Password Authentication Provider is registered with SIP. The following sections describe each authentication provider and how to configure it.

Null Authentication Provider

With this external authentication provider, no authentication is performed and no user name is required. Anyone who requests the portal becomes the user “anyuser.”

What the user sees depends upon whether “anyuser” is defined in the User Role model, and whether there is a default user configured in the User Role model if “anyuser” is not explicitly defined.

To use this authentication provider, simply register it with SIP. To do so, see “Registering an Authentication Provider” on page 254. An example registration follows.

Example Registration of the Null Authentication Provider

```
<Authentication
  LoginPage="/ovportal"
  AuthenticationProviderClass=
    "com.hp.ov.portal.security.NullAuthenticationProvider"
  ShowLogoutButton="no" />
```

No-Password Authentication Provider

This authentication provider is configured out of the box. It performs no authentication and only requires a user name. The user name must match the name of a user in the User Role Model (unless the defaulting mechanisms, such as a default user, are used).

Choosing and Configuring an Authentication Provider

This provider is useful when you want to set up and try out portal views for different users before making SIP available to end users. This is not an authentication provider that would ever be used in a production environment.

To use this authentication provider, simply register it with SIP. To do so, see “Registering an Authentication Provider” on page 254. An example registration follows.

Example Registration of the No Password Authentication Provider

```
<Authentication
  LoginPage="/ovportal/jsp/security/userName_html.jsp"
  AuthenticationProviderClass=
  "com.hp.ov.portal.security.NoPasswordAuthenticationProvider"
  ShowLogoutButton="yes"
  LogoutPage="/ovportal/jsp/security/logout_html.jsp"/>
```

Password File Authentication Provider

This authentication provider requires a user name and password. The password is stored encrypted, using UNIX crypt(3), and the supplied password is encrypted and compared to the stored password. This is reasonably secure if the network communication channel is protected (via SSL, for example) and if the password file is not accessible outside the system.

To use this authentication provider, register it with SIP, as described in “Registering an Authentication Provider” on page 254. An example registration follows.

Example Registration of the Password File Authentication Provider

```
<Authentication
  LoginPage="/ovportal/jsp/security/login_html.jsp"
  AuthenticationProviderClass=
  "com.hp.ov.portal.security.FileAuthenticationProvider"
  ShowLogoutButton="yes"
  LogoutPage="/ovportal/jsp/security/logout_html.jsp"/>
```

Configuring User Logins

For the Password File Authentication Provider, SIP provides `htpasswd`, a program for configuring user logins. The resulting `passwd` file stores user names and encrypted passwords. For example:

```
operator:2TD4P8x16h38o
larry:C0uxYt.Ububrg
david:Z3EVMN/1mtcSc
```

As shipped with SIP, the `passwd` file will contain one user: `ovuser` with the password `ovuser`.

To use this authentication provider, you need to configure the portal users to be permitted to log in.

To Create User Logins and Passwords

- On UNIX:

As root, type:

```
/opt/OV/SIP/bin/htpasswd /opt/OV/SIP/etc/passwd <username>
```

- On Windows 2000:

In a command window, type:

```
"%SIP_HOME%\bin\htpasswd"
"%SIP_HOME%\etc\passwd" <username>
```

where `<username>` is the name of the user you want to add. You will be prompted for the user's password.

NOTE

A word about `htpasswd` parameters:

You must use the default encryption mechanism. Do not use the `-m` and `-s` options to specify an encryption mechanism other than the default.

If you use `-c` to create a `passwd` file and the file already exists, you will overwrite the existing file and lose any entries in that file.

So that users need not share their passwords with you, the administrator, users can create their own password file entries with the `-n` option and mail them to you to add to the password file.

Choosing and Configuring an Authentication Provider

For your information, the location of the default password file is configured in the `SIPPath.properties` file located in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\webapps\ovportal\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/webapps/ovportal/

To Delete User Logins

1. Using a text editor, open the `passwd` file located in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\SIP\etc\passwd
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/etc/passwd

2. Delete the login entry, and save the file.

LDAP Authentication Provider

The LDAP Authentication Provider works by getting the username and password from the login page and determining whether it can bind with the LDAP server using that username and password. It does not look up the user's password in the LDAP database.

Installing JSSE or Equivalent

If the LDAP server performs authenticated binds using SSL connections, you need to install a secure socket implementation, such as JSSE (Java Secure Socket Extension), available from `java.sun.com`. For installation instructions, reference the whitepaper *Configuring SIP to Use Secure Socket Library (SSL) Protocol for HTTPS* located at the following web site: <http://www.openview.hp.com>.

Registering the LDAP Authentication Provider

To use this authentication provider, register it with SIP, as described in "Registering an Authentication Provider" on page 254. An example registration follows.

Example Registration of the LDAP Authentication Provider

```
<Authentication
  LoginPage="/ovportal/jsp/security/login_html.jsp"
  AuthenticationProviderClass=
```

```
"com.hp.ov.portal.security.LDAPAuthenticationProvider"  
ShowLogoutButton="yes"  
LogoutPage="/ovportal/jsp/security/logout_html.jsp"/>
```

Configuring the LDAP Authentication Provider

1. Configure the LDAP Authentication Provider. It is in the following file:

Windows 2000:

```
%SIP_HOME%\conf\share\authentication\LDAP\LDAP.xml
```

UNIX:

```
/opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/authentication/LDAP/LDAP.xml
```

NOTE

The LDAP.dtd file is found in the same directory as the LDAP.xml file. The attributes defined in these files are described in Table 9-1 below.

2. Test the LDAP Authentication Provider configuration to confirm that you configured the parameters correctly. Run the command:

Windows 2000:

```
%SIP_HOME%\bin\LDAP.bat username "password"
```

UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/bin/LDAP username "password"

You must enclose the password in double-quotes as shown if it contains non-alphanumeric characters.

This command outputs to the command window verbose tracing of each step in the LDAP authentication. Any failures should indicate what parameter is configured incorrectly. Be sure to test each of the following cases:

- No such user (should fail)
 - Valid user, wrong password (should fail)
 - Valid user, correct password (should succeed)
3. To make the configuration changes take effect, stop and restart the servlet engine. For instructions on doing so, refer to “Restarting the Servlet Engine” on page 287.

Table 9-1 **Attributes of the LDAPServerConfig Element**

Attributes	Description
baseDN	<p>A required attribute that defines the context in which the LDAP Authentication Provider will search the LDAP database for the user to authenticate. baseDN is a string. For example, baseDN="ou=Employees, o=acme.com"</p>
uidAttr	<p>The user ID attribute to search for. For example, if the LDAP.xml file contains:</p> <pre>uidAttr="uid"</pre> <p>and the user submits to the login page the name:</p> <pre>"Wile_E_Coyote@acme.com"</pre> <p>and baseDN is:</p> <pre>baseDN="ou=Employees, o=acme.com"</pre> <p>Then, the LDAP Authentication Provider will look up the user with the search:</p> <pre>(ou=Employees, o=acme.com, uid=Wile_E_Coyote@acme.com)</pre>
LDAPServer	<p>A required attribute that defines the LDAP server to which to authenticate. This should be the server's fully-qualified domain name. For example:</p> <pre>LDAPServer="ldap.acme.com"</pre>

Table 9-1 Attributes of the LDAPServerConfig Element

Attributes	Description
LDAPPort	<p>A required attribute that defines the port at which the LDAP server is listening. If useSSL is "yes", this should be the port at which the LDAP server is accepting SSL connections.</p> <p>The standard port for LDAP is 389, and for LDAP over SSL is 636, but you should be sure to determine what port your server is using. For example:</p> <p>LDAPPort="636"</p>
useSSL	<p>Should be "yes" if the LDAP server performs authenticated binds using an SSL connection, and "no" if it authenticates passwords submitted in plain text and not over an SSL connection.</p> <p>For example: useSSL="yes"</p>
authType	<p>The type of authentication used by the LDAP server. Valid values of authType are:</p> <p>none: Use no authentication (anonymous)</p> <p>simple: Use weak authentication (clear-text password)</p> <p>sasl_mech: A space-separated list of SASL mechanism names. SASL is specified in RFC 2222.</p> <p>The LDAP authentication provider has only been verified to support "simple" authentication, but over an SSL connection (useSSL="yes"), this is reasonably secure.</p> <p>For example: authType="simple"</p>

Table 9-1 **Attributes of the LDAPServerConfig Element**

Attributes	Description
searchFirst	<p>If this is "yes", the LDAP Authentication Provider will search for username in the database before attempting to bind as that user. This is appropriate if the uidAttr is an alias, and the LDAP server requires the user to bind as the real Distinguished Name returned by the search, if successful. Performance will be better if this can be "no", since the database need only be accessed once.</p> <p>For example: searchFirst="yes"</p>

Web Server Authentication Provider

This authentication provider requires no user name and password if the user has already been authenticated by the web server. The user is considered authenticated if `HttpServletRequest.getRemoteUser()` returns non-null. This assumes that you have set up one of the various web server authentication mechanisms and that the portal user has satisfied that mechanism's web server authentication.

The Web Server Authentication Provider that comes with SIP is an external authentication provider. For it to work, you must use only the forms of authentication that are supported by BOTH the web server and the servlet engine. Look at the Table 9-2 to identify what forms are supported by both the Tomcat servlet engine (used by SIP) and by IIS and Apache.

Table 9-2 **Forms of Authentications Supported by Web Servers and the Tomcat Servlet Engine**

	IIS Web Server	Apache Web Server	Tomcat Servlet Engine
HTTP Basic	X	X	X
HTTP Form	X	X	X
HTTP Digest	X	X	
HTTPS Client	X	X	
Windows Challenge/Response	X		X

If you can use one of the three forms that are common to the web server and servlet engine—HTTP Basic, HTTP Form, and Windows Challenge/Response—configure them and then the Web Server Authentication Provider will recognize whether a user has been

authenticated. The scope and duration of the user's authentication are defined by the Web Server. Configuring user logins is a web-server-specific task; refer to Apache and IIS documentation.

If you must use one of the forms of authentication that is supported by the web server but not by Tomcat, you may need to use a different servlet engine, or else write a custom authentication provider that accesses the web server directly instead of through the servlet engine. These alternatives are not explicitly supported by SIP but may be possible solutions in this situation.

To use this authentication provider, register it with SIP, as described in "Registering an Authentication Provider" on page 254. An example registration follows.

Example Registration of the Web Server Authentication Provider

```
<Authentication
  LoginPage="/ovportal/jsp/security/noAuthAvail_html.jsp"
  AuthenticationProviderClass=
  "com.hp.ov.portal.security.WebServerAuthenticationProvider"
  ShowLogoutButton="no"/>
```

NNM SSO Authentication Provider

This authentication provider requires no user name and password, if the user has already been authenticated by the NNM Session Manager web login mechanism. This authentication provider requires that NNM be running on the same host as SIP.

To use this authentication provider, register it with SIP, as described in "Registering an Authentication Provider" on page 254. An example registration follows.

Configuration for NNM SSO Authentication (See Note below)

```
<Authentication
  LoginPage=
  "http://<NNM_SIP_host>/OvCgi/ovlaunch.exe?URL=/ovportal/"
  AuthenticationProviderClass=
  "com.hp.ov.portal.security.NNMSSOAuthenticationProvider"
  ShowLogoutButton="yes"
  LogoutPage="/ovportal/jsp/security/logout_html.jsp"/>
```

NOTE

The NNM SSO Authentication Provider requires that NNM is running on the same host as SIP. The `<NNM_SIP_host>` referred to in Figure is the fully-qualified hostname of the machine running SIP and NNM.

On Windows, the NNM SSO Authentication example in Figure on page 252 will work without further configuration.

On UNIX, note that the login page URL is using the default port, rather than port 8880, which the NNM Web GUI normally uses on UNIX. If you want the NNM Web GUI to authenticate for SIP, it must run on the same web server (and same port) as SIP, or else the cookies the NNM Web UI creates will not be visible to SIP.

To make this work on UNIX, add the following to the SIP apache web server configuration file `/opt/OV/SIP/apache/conf/httpd.conf`:

```
Alias /OvDocs/ /opt/OV/www/htdocs/  
ScriptAlias /OpenView /opt/OV/www/cgi-bin/OpenView  
ScriptAlias /OvCgi/ /opt/OV/www/cgi-bin/  
Alias /OvBackgrounds/ /opt/OV/share/backgrounds/
```

Registering an Authentication Provider

After you choose an authentication provider, you need to indicate to SIP the one to use. The authentication provider is a portal-wide setting configured in the `OVPortalConfig.xml` file.

1. Open `OVPortalConfig.xml` located in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\framework\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/framework/

2. Find the `Authentication` element in the file, and edit the following attributes:

- `LoginPage` (required)
- `AuthenticationProviderClass` (required)
- `ShowLogoutButton`
- `LogoutPage`
- `SessionTimeout`

For sample configurations of each of the supplied authentication providers, see Figure through Figure . For an explanation of each of the `Authentication` attributes, see Table 9-3 on page 255.

Definitions of the `Authentication` child element are located in Table 9-3 on page 255.

3. When finished, save the file.
4. After changing `OVPortalConfig.xml`, you must stop and restart the servlet engine before the changes take effect in SIP. You can do so through the SIP Administration Pages or from the command line. For instructions, see “Restarting the Servlet Engine” on page 287.

NOTE

If you have a SIP server specifically for other display types, such as PDA or WML, use the corresponding `*_<devicetype>.jsp` files; for example `login_wml.jsp` or `login_pda.jsp`. The examples in Figures 10-1 through Figure 10-6 refer to the HTML device type.

Table 9-3 Configurable Attributes of the Authentication Element

Attribute	Description
LoginPage	<p>The required LoginPage attribute is the URL of the login page used by the Authentication Provider. Portal and External Authentication Providers use this URL differently.</p> <p>A Portal Authentication Provider requires a login page containing a form with an action that reinvokes ovportal with the parameters J_USERNAME (user name) and J_PASSWORD (password). For an example, see the login page supplied with SIP, located in:</p> <p><i>Windows 2000:</i> %SIP_HOME%\webapps\ovportal\jsp\security\login_html.jsp</p> <p><i>UNIX:</i> /opt/OV/SIP/webapps/ovportal/jsp/security/login_html.jsp</p> <p>If the login page is on the same host as SIP, this is referred to with the relative URL: /ovportal/jsp/security/login_html.jsp</p> <p>An External Authentication Provider can use several different types of login pages, depending on the security policy it implements. For example, the Null Authentication Provider uses /ovportal as its login page, since all logins automatically succeed.</p> <p>The NNM SSO Authentication Provider uses the login page of the NNM Web UI: http://localhost/OvCgi/ovlaunch.exe?URL=/ovportal</p> <p>Note that in order for this to work, the NNM Web UI must share the same host and web server port as SIP, because otherwise the cookies created by ovsessionmgr will not be valid for the SIP session.</p> <p>The WebServerAuthenticationProvider uses the “No Authentication Available” error page as its login page, since either the web server has already taken care of authentication, or some misconfiguration has occurred.</p>

Table 9-3 Configurable Attributes of the Authentication Element

Attribute	Description
AuthenticationProviderClass	<p>The fully-qualified name of a Java class that implements either the <code>PortalAuthenticationProvider</code> interface or the <code>ExternalAuthenticationProvider</code> interface. For example:</p> <pre>AuthenticationProviderClass="com.hp.ov.portal.security.FileAuthenticationProvider"</pre> <p>Also see "Javadocs" on page 260.</p>
ShowLogoutButton	<p>If the Authentication Provider permits logout, configure <code>ShowLogoutButton="yes"</code>. For example, logout is meaningful in the case of the File Authentication Provider, but not in the case of the Web Server Authentication Provider (since you would have to exit the web browser to log out).</p>
LogoutPage	<p>If the authentication provider permits logout, and if it has information or controls that it wishes to present to the user after logout, configure the <code>LogoutPage</code> attribute with the URL to the logout page. For example:</p> <pre>LogoutPage="/ovportal/jsp/security/logout.jsp"</pre> <p>For an example, see the login page supplied with SIP, located in:</p> <p><i>Windows 2000:</i> <code>%SIP_HOME%\webapps\ovportal\jsp\security\logout_html.jsp</code></p> <p><i>UNIX:</i> <code>/opt/OV/SIP/webapps/ovportal/jsp/security/logout_html.jsp</code></p>

Table 9-3 Configurable Attributes of the Authentication Element

Attribute	Description
SessionTimeout	<p>The time, in seconds, that a SIP session can remain inactive before SIP will automatically terminate the session. Automatic portal refreshes do not count as activity.</p> <p>The default session time out is 32400 seconds, or 9 hours. SessionTimeout="0" means use the application server's default session time out, normally 30 minutes. SessionTimeout="-1" means never time out.</p>

Developing a Custom Authentication Provider

If none of the supplied authentication providers meets your needs, you can write and integrate your own custom authentication provider. SIP provides APIs and sample code to write your own Java class to integrate with SIP. Following is a general idea of what is involved in this type of integration.

SIP Authentication Model

The SIP authentication model loads a configured Authentication Provider Java class. If one of the supplied Java classes is not sufficient, you can create a Java class that implements a custom authentication provider and integrate it with SIP.

In general terms, creating a custom authentication provider involves:

- Deciding the type of Authentication Provider to develop: Portal Authentication Provider or External Authentication Provider
- Developing the code
- Developing a login page
- Developing a logout page
- Making the authentication provider configurable, if relevant
- Registering the authentication provider with SIP

Decide Upon the Type of Authentication Provider

First, you need to decide whether you are going to develop a Portal Authentication Provider or an External Authentication Provider. Use the following general principles and supplied samples to guide your decision.

General Principles

You should implement the `PortalAuthenticationProvider` interface if the user's session (the "state" of whether the user is logged in) is held locally, in SIP.

You should implement the `ExternalAuthenticationProvider` interface if the user's session is held externally to SIP.

PortalAuthenticationProvider implements the Authenticate method, which accepts username and password as input and makes the decision whether password actually authenticates username.

ExternalAuthenticationProvider implements the getAuthenticatedUser method, which determines whether there is an authenticated user or not (determined through some means known only to itself), and if so, returns the username to SIP.

Supplied Authentication Providers As Examples

Use the description of the supplied authentication providers in Table 9-4 on page 259 as examples when developing a custom authentication provider.

Table 9-4 **Supplied Authentication Providers**

Supplied Authentication Providers	Type and Description
NullAuthenticationProvider	An External Authentication Provider, because the user's state of being logged in is external to SIP (always true) and because the user never inputs a username or password, and the Authentication Provider returns a username (always "anyuser") to SIP.
NoPasswordAuthenticationProvider	A Portal Authentication Provider, because the user's state of being logged in is local to SIP, and because it accepts a username from the user.
FileAuthenticationProvider	A Portal Authentication Provider, because the user's state of being logged in is local to SIP, and because it authenticates based on a username and password input by the user.

Table 9-4 **Supplied Authentication Providers (Continued)**

Supplied Authentication Providers	Type and Description
LDAPAuthenticationProvider	A Portal Authentication Provider, because the user's state of being logged in is local to SIP, and because it authenticates based on a username and password input by the user. It does perform an authenticated bind with the remote LDAP server, but the LDAP server does not maintain this bind for the duration of the session; the LDAP Authentication Provider merely delegates the password validation task to the LDAP server.
NNMSSOAuthenticationProvider	An External Authentication Provider, because the user's state of being logged in is external to SIP (held by <code>ovsessionmgr</code> , part of NNM). SIP never sees the username and password input by the user, and it returns the username (which it gets from a cookie) to SIP.
WebServerAuthenticationProvider	An External Authentication Provider, because the user's state of being logged in is external to SIP (held by the web server). SIP never sees the username and password input by the user, and it returns the username (which it gets by calling <code>HttpServletRequest.getRemoteUser()</code>) to SIP.

Develop the Code

Following is general information that will help you develop your custom authentication provider code.

Development Resources

You have several resources for the development of the authentication provider.

Javadocs

Javadoc for the Authentication Provider interfaces can be found at:

- Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\htdocs\javadoc\index.html
- UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/htdocs/javadoc/index.html

Sample Authentication Providers

Start with one of the two sample Authentication Provider java files:

- `SampleExternalAuthenticationProvider.java`
- `SamplePortalAuthenticationProvider.java`

Located in:

- *Windows 2000*: %SIP_HOME%\samples\authentication
- *UNIX*: /opt/OV/SIP/samples/authentication

Main Program

For testing purposes, it can be helpful to add a main method to your Authentication Provider which outputs results to standard output.

For a `PortalAuthenticationProvider`, the main method would interpret its first two command line arguments as username and password, pass them to the `Authenticate` method, and output detailed tracing.

An `ExternalAuthenticationProvider` could be tested as a CGI program, so that it can access cookies.

ExternalAuthenticationProvider

An `ExternalAuthenticationProvider` must implement the `getAuthenticatedUserName` method. Refer to the javadoc for details.

Since an `ExternalAuthenticationProvider` maintains state with a remote authentication service, if it supports logout, it may need to clear this state when the user logs out. For example, it may need to remove the session cookie.

PortalAuthenticationProvider

A `PortalAuthenticationProvider` must implement the `authenticate` method. Refer to the javadoc for details.

The `logout` method of a `PortalAuthenticationProvider` normally does not need to do anything.

Developing a Login Page

The login page you develop is different based on whether you are developing an External Authentication Provider or a Portal Authentication Provider.

ExternalAuthentication Provider

An ExternalAuthenticationProvider may or may not use a login page. Two models are possible.

If the user has already logged in when the portal is first accessed, the `getAuthenticatedUserName` method can detect this and return the correct user name. If not, it returns null and the Portal redirects to the login page, which either is an error page (“You have not already logged in”) or is the login page for the external authentication server, which gathers whatever parameters it requires and authenticates however it chooses. From the point of view of the SIP program, all that is required is that the next time the `getAuthenticatedUserName` method is called, it can return a user name. Normally this requires a session cookie to be set. See the Javadoc for the `ExternalAuthenticationProvider` interface for a detailed description of how to do this.

PortalAuthenticationProvider

The login page associated with a `PortalAuthenticationProvider` is required to forward to `/ovportal/` with the query parameters `J_USERNAME` and `J_PASSWORD` set. Normally this would be accomplished with a form with `action=/ovportal/`. The Portal calls the `PortalAuthenticationProvider.authenticate` method with these parameters to authenticate the user.

When developing your login page, start with `/ovportal/jsp/security/login_html.jsp`.

Located in:

Windows 2000:

```
%SIP_HOME%\webapps\ovportal\jsp\security\login_html.jsp
```

UNIX:

```
/opt/OV/SIP/webapps/ovportal/jsp/security/login_html.jsp
```

This supplied login page also has the following useful features, which you can copy:

- If Javascript is enabled, it positions the cursor on the username field when the page is first displayed.
- If Javascript is enabled, typing the username and then hitting either tab or newline forwards the user to the password field.
- If Javascript is enabled, typing the password and then hitting newline submits the form.
- If Javascript is not enabled, the login page does work correctly, though it is not as user-friendly.

Developing a Logout Page

The portal redirects to the configured logout page when the user logs out. This page can issue a message, such as, “If you want to be sure none of your confidential data escapes, exit the browser now.” Or it can permit the user to login again, with a button linking to `/ovportal/`.

When developing your logout page, start with
`/ovportal/jsp/security/logout_html.jsp`.

Located in the following directory:

Windows 2000: `%SIP_HOME%\webapps\ovportal\jsp\security`
UNIX: `/opt/OV/SIP/webapps/ovportal/jsp/security`

Make a Custom Authentication Provider Configurable (if Relevant)

Your authentication provider may have configuration parameters. See for example the sample configuration file for the LDAP Authentication Provider, located in:

Windows 2000:
`%SIP_HOME%\conf\share\authentication\LDAP\LDAP.xml`
UNIX: `/opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/authentication/LDAP/LDAP.xml`

Register a Custom Authentication Provider with SIP

You must register your authentication provider with SIP by configuring the Authentication element in the file.

Windows 2000: `%SIP_HOME%\conf\framework\OVPortalConfig.xml`
UNIX: `/opt/OV/SIP/conf/framework/OVPortalConfig.xml`

Developing a Custom Authentication Provider

For information on registering an authentication provider, see “Registering an Authentication Provider” on page 254.

For a detailed description of the authentication elements, refer to Table 9-3 on page 255.

Configuring SIP in a Distributed Environment

Service Information Portal provides support for distributed and shared configuration files. User roles, user preferences, portal views, and module configuration files can be shared or distributed across a network.

Multiple SIP servers can share portal configuration, using HTTP or HTTPS to distribute and share SIP configuration. This makes it easier to maintain multiple SIP servers, because configuration changes only need to be made in one place instead of on each SIP server. The SIP configuration server can be in the DMZ or behind another firewall.

Distributed and Shared Configuration Files

Service Information Portal provides a mechanism for configuring remote access to these configuration files through the `SIPPath.properties` file. User roles, user preferences, portal views, and module configuration files can be shared or distributed across the network.

Only two entries in `SIPPath.properties` can be configured for remote access through HTTP or HTTPS: `SIP_SHARE_CONF_DIR` and `SIP_PASSWD_FILE`. The other directories must be local directories on the SIP server.

Configuring the `SIP_Path.properties` file

1. Using an ASCII editor, open the `SIPPath.properties` file:

Windows 2000:

```
%SIP_HOME%\webapps\ovportal\SIPPath.properties
```

UNIX: `/opt/OV/SIP/webapps/ovportal/SIPPath.properties`

2. Set `SIP_SHARE_CONF_DIR` to a URL or shared file system path where your shared SIP configuration is installed. The path must contain the equivalent of `/opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/` in a local SIP configuration.

Figure 10-1 **URL Example**

```
SIP_SHARE_CONF_DIR=http://<YourServer.YourCompany.com>/OvShareDocs/
```

You must configure the web server with an appropriate alias for `/OvShareDocs/`. For example, you would configure an apache web server by adding a line like the following to `httpd.conf`:

```
Alias /OvShareDocs/ /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share
```

NOTE

The `OvShareDocs` directory should contain the files that would otherwise appear in the `/share` directory:

Windows 2000: `%SIP_HOME%\conf\share\`

UNIX: `/opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/`

Figure 10-2 HTTPS URL Example

```
SIP_SHARE_CONF_DIR=https://<YourServer.YourCompany.com>/OvShareDocs/
```

You can also serve shared configuration from a secure web server. In order for this to work, you must configure a Java SSL implementation, like JSSE, on the SIP client systems. For documentation of how to install JSSE, see the whitepaper *Configuring SIP to Use Secure Socket Layer (SSL) Protocol for HTTPS*. You can navigate to the whitepaper at the following web site: <http://www.openview.hp.com>.

Figure 10-3 UNIX Shared File Path Example

```
SIP_SHARE_CONF_DIR=/net/YourServer/opt/OV/SIP/conf/share
```

Clients must be UNIX systems. You can configure this using the NFS automounter on the client system and `exportfs(1M)` on a HP-UX server or `share(1M)` on a Solaris server.

The user that SIP is running as must have access to the remote files. By default, the Tomcat process is configured to run under the user “www” (on HP-UX) and “nobody” (on Solaris). A potential problem is that the user may have a different user id on the SIP server than it does on the remote system. For example, on the SIP system, user “www” has user id 101. On the remote system with the `/conf/share` directory, “www” has user id 30. When the id is passed in the authentication check, the authentication will fail. The solution is to make sure that “www” has the same user id on both systems. Another possibility is running Tomcat as some other new or existing user, provided that both systems agree on the `user_name/user_id` mapping.

Figure 10-4 **Windows Shared File Path Example**

```
SIP_SHARE_CONF_DIR=file://YourServer/<ShareName>
```

This example is one of several ways to mount the remote directory. You could also use the Windows Map Network Drive dialog.

In the example in Figure 10-4, you share the folder %SIP_HOME%\conf\share using the *ShareName* on the server system. The SIP client, which must be Windows, automatically accesses the shared file over the network. The server can be a UNIX system if you have NFS on the Windows system.

By default, the Tomcat service is configured to run as the “system” account. When SIP tries to access shared resources on Windows, it only has the default local system account privileges, and may not have access to shared drives on other machines. In this situation, configure the Tomcat service to be executed as a user who has access to the remote directory. The user should have “read” and “change” privileges to the remote directory.

In the Windows 2000 *Services* window, select the Tomcat service and view the properties. Select the *Log On* tab and specify the username and password of the user that Tomcat should run under. Stop and restart the service, and SIP will have the privileges that are granted to the given user.

NOTE When SIP is running in the default configuration (using the default system account), it may not have permission to access all remote resources.

Table 10-1 **Default Port and Protocol Settings for Shared SIP Configurations**

Server Product	Protocol	Port	Configuration
SIP	http	80	Protocol and port configurable by changing the value of SIP_SHARE_CONF_DIR in the SIPPath.properties file. The default is a local file system directory.
	https	443	

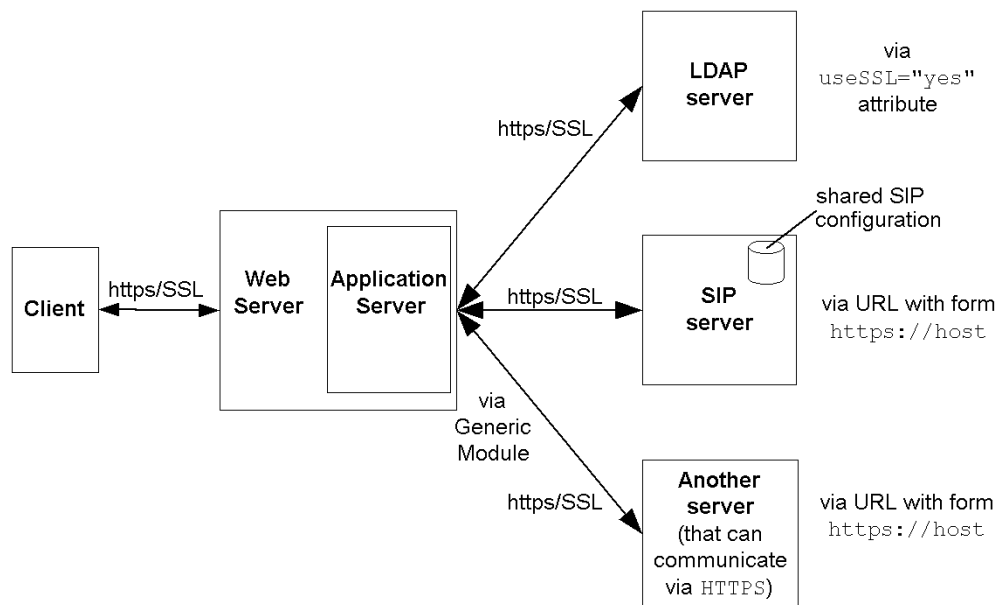
Whitepaper on Setting Up SIP in a Distributed Environment

For the whitepaper *Configuring Service Information Portal (SIP) to Work Within a Distributed Secure Environment*, go to <http://www.openview.hp.com> and navigate to the whitepapers.

Setting Up SIP to Use Secure Socket Layer (SSL) Protocol for HTTPS

The diagram in Figure 10-5 below shows the application server using HTTPS/SSL to serve SIP data to a client. It also shows the application server being served data using HTTPS/SSL from back-end servers, such as the LDAP server, SIP server, and any other server that can communicate via HTTPS.

Figure 10-5 **Communication using HTTPS/SSL**



Enabling the Application Server to Serve SIP Data Using HTTPS

SIP uses Tomcat as its application server. Follow this procedure to enable access to SIP through HTTPS:

Setting Up SIP to Use Secure Socket Layer (SSL) Protocol for HTTPS

- Install SIP onto a host that has a secure web server installed, and configure SIP to run on the secure web server. The whitepaper *Running SIP on a Stronghold 3.0 Secure Web Server* provides an example of how to configure SIP on an Apache-based secure web server. (You can navigate to the whitepaper at the following web site: <http://www.openview.hp.com>.) For IIS, configure it as a secure web server.
- When accessing SIP from the client browser, use a URL of the form `https://<hostname>/ovportal`

Enabling SIP to Communicate with a Back-end Server Using HTTPS

You can enable SIP to be an HTTPS client and get its back-end server content through SSL. This requires that JSSE, or another package that enables Java programs to act as an HTTPS client, is installed on the application server.

Also, the application server must have certificates so that it trusts the secure web servers on the host systems. For installation instructions, reference the whitepaper *Configuring SIP to Use Secure Socket Layer (SSL) Protocol for HTTPS*. You can navigate to the whitepaper at the following web site: <http://www.openview.hp.com>.

- For LDAP, set the SIP attribute `useSSL="yes"` in the following file:

Windows 2000:

```
%SIP_HOME%\conf\share\authentication\LDAP\LDAP.xml
```

UNIX:

```
/opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/authentication/LDAP/LDAP.xml
```

For more information, see “LDAP Authentication Provider” on page 246.

- For other hosts that can communicate via HTTPS, use a URL of the form `https://host`

Enabling HTTPS in the SIP Configuration Editor

The option to select HTTPS when configuring OVIS and OVR through the SIP Configuration Editor is disabled, unless you have configured SIP to communicate through SSL. Check the product documentation that came with your version of the OVIS or OVR management software

Setting Up SIP to Use Secure Socket Layer (SSL) Protocol for HTTPS

to verify that HTTPS is fully supported. Then reference the whitepaper *Configuring SIP to Use Secure Socket Layer (SSL) Protocol for HTTPS*. You can navigate to the whitepaper at the following web site:
<http://www.openview.hp.com>.

Configuring SIP to Run in a Wireless Environment

You can use several of the SIP modules to display data on web-ready cell phones and personal digital assistants (PDAs) that support a web browser:

- NNM Network Device Health and Alarms modules
- OVO Messages module
- Service Health and Service Cards modules
- Internet Services module
- Bookmarks and Message Board modules
- Generic modules

Recommended Approach to Using SIP in a Wireless Environment

The optimal way to run SIP in a wireless environment is to have a second SIP installation that serves wireless clients only. To run SIP on both cell phones and PDAs, you may even want two separate SIP installations for these.

- SIP works best when a single display type (such as HTML) is configured per SIP server. If multiple client types access the same SIP server, problems can arise, particularly with WML clients.
- For authentication providers and login and logout pages, SIP cannot select a page that is appropriate for the client. One authentication mechanism can be configured per SIP installation. If you are using the same authentication provider and login page for your regular SIP environment and the wireless environment, you can use one SIP installation. If not, you will need a separate installation of SIP for the wireless environment.

How SIP Works in the Wireless Environment

SIP associates each type of client with a particular display type: web browsers are associated with HTML, cell phones are associated with WML, and personal digital assistants are associated with PDA. Based upon the display type, SIP selects the correct Java Server Pages (JSPs) and XSL style sheets. When a module displays output, the module selects a XSL document which also uses the display type, and in so doing, presents module information in a way that is best suited for the client.

The mapping of display types is made through the `webapps/ovportal/saagents.xml` file. This file is configured by default for HTML, PDA, and WML-capable devices. The file contains mappings of client names (for example, Netscape), specific client identification strings (for example, Mozilla/4.6), and display types (for example, HTML).

Configuration of SIP for the wireless environment is done through direct editing of XML files. Table 10-2 on page 276 shows all files related to running SIP in a wireless environment. Table 10-3 on page 277 lists and describes elements and attributes of the `saagents.xml` file.

Configuring SIP to Run Wireless

Assuming that you have chosen to run your wireless SIP on its own SIP server, you have a few configuration issues to be aware of and tasks to do.

Differences Between Standard Deployment of SIP and Wireless Deployment

There are several differences between how SIP behaves in a regular environment versus a wireless environment:

- Users cannot select (or switch) roles. The initial (default) role is always used.
- Users do not logout of SIP when running wireless. Instead, they just disconnect from the portal.
- Tabs and columns are not presented. All modules are displayed in the order in which they appear in the portal view file.
- Users cannot edit the modules or portal views.

Client-Specific Markup Issues

The Message Board, Bookmarks, and Generic modules display or reference data sources that may contain client-specific information. For example, the Generic module may reference a web page or site that supports HTML 4.0. This content may not be displayable in a PDA.

While WML contains markup that may be identical to HTML and displayable in Netscape or Internet Explorer, the reverse is rarely true. (Only certain tags can be displayed in both WML and HTML: paragraph, bold, italic, and table tags.) In addition, WML clients require well-formed XML syntax while web browsers usually do not.

For these reasons, the content displayed by the modules may produce errors when displayed through some clients. There is no method for filtering the display of non-compliant modules for a given display type. The only solution for certain clients is to not use the module at all.

Other Data Issues Specific to Individual Clients

Links for a HTML device usually do not work for a WML device. Also, you may run into a problem if you are trying to display too much data through the device.

Changing the Defaults in the saagents.xml File

Change the saagents.xml file to specify as the default the type of client the SIP server needs to support. The file is found in:

Windows: %SIP_HOME%\webapps\ovportals\saagents.xml
UNIX: opt/OV/SIP/webapps/ovportal/saagents.xml

For information on the elements and attributes of the saagents.xml file, see Table 10-3 on page 277.

Creating Portal Views Specific to Cell Phones and PDAs

Based on sample files supplied with SIP, you will create special portal views that display well in the wireless environment. The samples are can be found in:

Windows:
%SIP_HOME%\conf\share\views\samples\mobileDemo_pda.xml
%SIP_HOME%\conf\share\views\samples\mobileDemo_wml.xml

UNIX:

/opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/views/samples/mobileDemo_pda.xml
/opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/views/samples/mobileDemo_wml.xml

Tips for Creating Portal Views

- Only the portal view that is associated with the user's initial role is displayed.
- Portal tabs do not work in a wireless display. If modules in the portal view file are organized on tabs, they will be listed one after another. Place your most important modules at the beginning of the list to avoid lengthy scrolling.

Starting SIP in a Wireless Client

Start SIP by typing: `http://<server_name>/ovportal`

Log in as a valid SIP user.

Listing of XML Files and Elements

Configuration of SIP for the wireless environment is done through direct editing of XML files. Table 10-2 on page 276 shows all files related to running SIP in a wireless environment. Table 10-3 on page 277 lists and describes elements and attributes of the `saagents.xml` file.

Table 10-2 Files Related to Running SIP in a Wireless Environment

File and Location	Purpose
<i>Windows:</i> %SIP_HOME%\webapps\ovportals\saagents.xml <i>UNIX:</i> /opt/OV/SIP/webapps/ovportal/saagents.xml	Contains mappings of client devices to the display type.
<i>Windows:</i> %SIP_HOME%\conf\framework\OVPortalConfig.xml <i>UNIX:</i> /opt/OV/SIP/conf/framework/OVPortalConfig.xml	File in which SIP authentication provider (including a login page) is configured.

Table 10-2 Files Related to Running SIP in a Wireless Environment

File and Location	Purpose
<p><i>Windows:</i> %SIP_HOME%\webapps\ovportal\jsp\security <i>UNIX:</i> /opt/OV/SIP/webapps/ovportal/jsp/security</p> <p>login_pdf.jsp login_wml.jsp</p> <p>logout_pdf.jsp logout_wml.jsp</p> <p>noAuthAvail_pdf.jsp noAuthAvail_wml.jsp</p> <p>refresh_pdf.jsp refresh_wml.jsp</p> <p>userName_pdf.jsp userName_wml.jsp</p>	<p>Directory where JSPs are stored.</p>
<p><i>Windows:</i> %SIP_HOME%\conf\styles <i>UNIX:</i> /opt/OV/SIP/conf/styles</p>	<p>XSL files.</p>
<p><i>Windows:</i> %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\views\samples\ <i>UNIX:</i> /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/views/samples</p> <p>mobileDemo_pda.xml mobileDemo_wml.xml</p>	<p>Sample wireless-specific portal view files.</p>

Table 10-3 Mappings in the saagents.xml File

XML Elements and Attributes	Description
<p>agent device-name</p>	<p>This attribute is the canonical client name. It is not used in SIP 3.0, however, it provides an easy way to identify each name when reading the saagents.xml file.</p>
<p>display-type</p>	<p>This attribute is a canonical name that best represents the client. This string is used in the JSP and XSL file names, so it should be a single word consisting of ASCII alphanumeric characters. The values recognized by SIP are “html”, “pda”, and “wml”.</p>

Table 10-3 **Mappings in the saagents.xml File (Continued)**

XML Elements and Attributes	Description
user-agent	This element is the client ID string. It represents a sub-string of the client's user-agent HTTP request field. The ID string may match any or all of this field. When the portal is looking for a match, it takes the first user-agent that matches the request field, so list the most specific user-agent first in the file.

Running SIP in Non-English Language Mode

Following are required configuration tasks that help you prepare to run SIP on a system and browser that have been configured to operate in non-English language mode.

Configuring the Browser Settings

SIP supports display of characters in UTF-8 code set to the Web browser. Make sure your web browser is either in the “Auto-Select” or “UTF-8” modes to ensure that the data is properly displayed.

If the Web browser has “Auto-Select” enabled for Encodings, the UTF-8 data should be displayed correctly through the portal. If not, you will need to set the browser’s Encoding to “Unicode (UTF-8)”.

Configuring Japanese Fonts (HP-UX 11.x only)

On HP-UX 11.x, in order to display Japanese fonts properly, you must do the following:

1. Make sure the HP-UX Java JDK 1.3.1_01 (which contains the Ricoh fonts) is installed. You can download it from the HP web site:
`http://www.hp.com/java`
2. Make sure two HP-UX 11 patches are installed: PHSS_24931 and PHSS_25091.
3. Make a backup of `fonts.properties.ja`, and then link the `fonts.properties.ja.Ricoh` file to `fonts.properties.ja`:

```
cd /opt/java1.3/jre/lib
mv fonts.properties.ja fonts.properties.ja.ORIG
ln -s fonts.properties.ja.Ricoh fonts.properties.ja
```
4. For the SIP software, edit `/etc/rc.config.d/ovsip` (which contains SIP’s environment settings) and add the following lines:

```
JAVA_FONTS=/usr/lib/X11/fonts/TrueType/japanese.st/typefaces
Export JAVA_FONTS
```

5. For the SIP Configuration Editor, manually set `JAVA_FONTS` and `LANG` in your environment.

6. Set the `DISPLAY` variable to an active X server session used by SIP to the system where the Japanese fonts are available.

NOTE

You may need to adjust the settings in `/etc/rc.config.d/ovsip` to make sure the `DISPLAY` is pointing at the local system's X server (or alternatively, the Virtual Networking Computer (VNC) server running on the SIP server) upon startup of SIP.

7. Restart the servlet engine to enable the changes made to `/etc/rc.config.d/ovsip`. For instructions, see "Restarting the Servlet Engine" on page 287.

Configuring the XML Files Used By SIP

If non-ASCII characters are added to XML, XSL, or JSP files, you must preserve the UTF-8 codeset for these characters.

NOTE

The Microsoft Windows 2000 Notepad editor allows files to be saved in the UTF-8 code set. On many UNIX platforms, the `iconv` command can be used to translate from Shift JIS (or any other code set) into UTF-8 to make editing in a non-UTF-8 codeset simpler.

Scaling SIP: Increasing the Amount of System Memory Used

By adjusting the JVM memory configuration to more system memory, you can improve how SIP runs in large environments.

Adjusting JVM Memory Usage Values for the Tomcat Servlet Engine

Most Java Virtual Machines (JVMs) are limited to a heap size of 65 Mb by default. Some command line options are available to set the maximum size of the JVM's memory, as well as the initial size: `-Xms` (initial size) and `-Xmx` (maximum size).

On Windows

1. Using the Windows registry editor, go to:

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Tomcat\Parameters
```

2. Edit the value: JVM Option Number 2.

The default value for the minimum memory usage size for the JVM is “`-Xms32m`”. The JVM will use at least this much memory. If you change the value to something other than 32, make sure the value is specified in megabytes.

3. Edit the value: JVM Option Number 3.

The default value for the maximum memory usage size is “`-Xmx128m`”. The JVM cannot exceed the memory size specified in this value. If you change the value to something other than 128, make sure the value is specified in megabytes.

On UNIX

The following script can be edited to change the JVM parameters:

```
/etc/rc.config.d/ovsip
```

```
JVM Default Parameters:
```

```
INITIAL_HEAP_SIZE=32m
```

```
MAX_HEAP_SIZE=128m
```

Scaling SIP: Increasing the Amount of System Memory Used

If you change these parameters, make sure you follow the correct syntax. The values of the JVM parameters must be in powers of 2 (for example, 32, 64, 128, 256, and so forth) and followed by the shortened form of “megabyte”, which is “m”.

Adjusting JVM Memory Usage Values for SIP Scripts

You can modify other SIP scripts to adjust the default memory usage values. Change the values of `INITIAL_HEAP_SIZE=32m` and `MAX_HEAP_SIZE=128m` to reflect the desired memory configuration.

Windows 2000:

```
$SIP/bin/create_role_db.bat  
$SIP/bin/SIPConfig.vbs
```

UNIX:

```
/opt/OV/bin/create_role_db  
/opt/OV/bin/SIPConfig
```

11**Performing Routine
Administrative Tasks**

Setting Portal Logging and Tracing

A portal log file is available to help you troubleshoot problems with the portal. The log file contains warning and error entries:

- A warning is logged to indicate that a problem occurred, but the SIP framework or a module was able to continue, possibly using a default value or some assumption. The warning is issued because the assumption may have been wrong and you might want to fix the problem.
- An error is logged when a problem prevents the SIP framework or a module from completing a task.

Portal tracing is primarily intended for use by HP support. It supplies a large amount of extra data that may be used to debug portal problems. You are advised to turn on portal tracing only if instructed to do so by support personnel. For errors, read the error description for instructions on fixing it.

Viewing Log Files

1. Log in as a user who has access to a special SIP Administrator role. For more information, “Understanding Special SIP Administrator Roles” on page 77.
2. Switch to the SIP Administrator role, if it is not already displayed.
3. Click the SIP General Admin tab.
4. To see entries that are of “warning” and “error” severity, go to the Logging and Tracing segment and click the View log file [View] button. In the case of warnings, check the assumption made by the program. Fix the configuration, if needed.

NOTE

Only the last 500 kb of a very large log file is displayed in the SIP user interface. If you want to examine the contents of the entire file, see the following:

Windows: %SIP_HOME%\log\sip.log

UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/log/sip.log

Setting Trace Level and Viewing Trace Files

Turn on portal tracing only if instructed to do so by support personnel.

1. Log in as a user who has access to a special Administrator role. For more information, “Understanding Special SIP Administrator Roles” on page 77.
2. Switch to the Administrator role, if it is not already displayed.
3. Click the SIP General Admin tab.
4. In the Logging and Tracing segment of the page, set the trace level.

Tracing can be turned on for all SIP sessions on the server or for the current session only.

Setting the trace level to anything above “none” causes entries to be written to the portal trace file. If you set it to “warning,” it will have the same contents as the log file.

5. Click [Apply] at the bottom of the portal page.
6. Display the trace file by clicking the View trace file [View] button.

A trace level of “tracing” results in entries that record key steps during the portal's execution.

A trace level of “verbose” does the same, but with greater detail.

NOTE

If you change the tracing level and go to another tab before clicking [Apply], your trace setting is not applied.

NOTE

Only the last 500 kb of a very large trace file is displayed in the SIP user interface. If you want to examine the contents of the entire file, see the following:

Windows: %SIP_HOME%\log\sip.trace

UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/log/sip.trace

Increasing the Size of the Log File

The default size for a log file is approximately 10 MB. When that size is reached, the log file is copied to `sip.log.old` or `sip.trace.old`, and a new file is started. It is possible to lose information if a file called `sip.<tracelog>.old` already exists.

You can modify the maximum log size by directly editing the `maxLogSize` value in `OVPortalConfig.xml` located in:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\framework\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/framework/

Controlling the Servlet Engine

SIP is a Java servlet that is accessed through the Tomcat servlet engine. SIP is restarted by stopping and restarting the servlet engine.

Restarting the Servlet Engine

After making certain configuration changes, you must restart the servlet engine before changes take effect:

- After adding or changing a module registration file.
- After making changes to the authentication provider configuration.
- In other situations where you are specifically instructed to do so.

To Restart the Servlet Engine from the SIP Administration Pages

Be aware that you and all other SIP users will be logged out when you restart the servlet engine.

1. Log in as a user who has access to a special SIP Administrator role. For more information, see “Understanding Special SIP Administrator Roles” in the *SIP Deployment and Integration Guide* (SIP_Deployment_Integration.pdf).
2. Switch to the SIP Administrator role, if it is not already displayed.
3. Click the SIP General Admin tab.
4. In the Servlet Engine Control segment, click [Restart].

To Restart the Servlet Engine from Outside of SIP

Windows 2000:

From the Control Panel, select Services. Stop and then restart Tomcat. Alternatively, you can use the command line: `net stop tomcat` and `net start tomcat`.

UNIX:

As root, stop and restart the web server and servlet engine by running the following. (The DISPLAY variable must be configured prior to restarting the web server and servlet engine, unless DISPLAY is set in /etc/rc.config.d/ovsip.)

Controlling the Servlet Engine

Stop on HP-UX: `/sbin/init.d/ovsip stop`
Start on HP-UX: `/sbin/init.d/ovsip start`

Stop on Solaris: `/etc/init.d/ovsip stop`
Start on Solaris: `/etc/init.d/ovsip start`

Running Garbage Collector

SIP can force the JVM to attempt to free up any previously requested system memory that is currently not being used.

1. Log in as a user who has access to a special SIP Administrator role. For more information, “Understanding Special SIP Administrator Roles” on page 77.
2. Switch to the SIP Administrator role, if it is not already displayed.
3. Click the SIP General Admin tab.
4. In the Servlet Engine Control segment, click [Garbage Collect].

Determining the Amount of Time It Takes to Display Each Module

If you are having performance problems with a portal, you can determine the amount of time each module takes to load. Using the Timer URL parameter, you can display the time, in milliseconds, at the bottom of each module.

Turning On the Timer

- In the browser window, enter the following:

`http://<yourmachinename>/ovportal?Timer=yes` (or true)

Turning Off the Timer

- In the browser window, enter the following:

`http://<yourmachinename>/ovportal?Timer=no` (or false)

Displaying More Detailed Error Messages in the Portal Interface

Through the portal you may see short error messages, such as “Data Not Configured” and so forth. You can display more verbose error information by turning on a URL parameter.

Turning On Portal Verbosity

- In the browser window, enter the following:

```
http://<yourmachinename>/ovportal?portalVerbosity=true
```

Turning Off Portal Verbosity

- In the browser window, enter the following:

```
http://<yourmachinename>/ovportal?portalVerbosity=false
```

Improving Performance

Certain SIP modules require significant initial load times because a large amount of data is passed over the network when the module is first accessed. As a result, the first person displaying these modules experiences the longest delay. To enhance your customer's experience, log into the portal after SIP has been restarted and open any portal view that contains the following modules (if used in your environment):

- NNM Alarms module
- Network Device Health module
- Topology Map module
- One of the following modules:
 - Service Graph
 - Service Browser
 - Service Health
 - Service Card

If you open it first, the required information is already cached when your customers access their portals. Your customers won't experience the delay. It is not necessary to perform a log in for each portal user. A single log in, viewing the above listed modules, is sufficient.

NOTE

If a tab page containing one of the NNM modules remains blank with the progress bar partially loaded, one of the NNM management stations (that SIP gathers data from) may be in the early phase of an NNM backup procedure.

Wait for the NNM backup to proceed beyond the `ovpause` state. The modules display when the NNM management station issues an `ovresume` command. If the browser timeout limit is exceeded while you are waiting, you must press [Refresh] to display the modules.

For more information, see the Troubleshooting section of the *NNM Integration with SIP* manual ([NNM_Integration.pdf](#)).

Monitoring the Size of the NNM snmpCollect Database

If automatic configuration of NNM SNMP data collection has been enabled, periodic trimming of the NNM SNMP data collector database will be necessary. For details, see "Monitoring the Size of NNM's snmpCollect Database" in the *NNM Integration with SIP* manual (`NNM_Integration.pdf`).

Checking the Contents of the Role Database

After running `create_role_db`, you can run the `test_role_db` command to verify the contents of the created role database.

- To find out the configured default user and default role, run:
`test_role_db`
- To see the database entry for a particular user, run:
`test_role_db -u <user>`
- To see the database entry for a particular role, run:
`test_role_db -r <role>`

Performing Routine Administrative Tasks
Checking the Contents of the Role Database

What You Need to Know About SIP Configuration Files and XML

SIP uses XML as the means of storing and retrieving all configuration information. XML is used to represent configuration data on the Service Information Portal server. XML is not being sent to the web browser over the wire. It is being used to store configuration files on the file system.

This appendix explains how SIP uses XML for various types of configuration information.

Use of XML for SIP Configuration Files

SIP configuration files can be categorized according to nine configuration types. Table A-1 lists the types of configurations and the associated file or directory. The remaining sections in this appendix describe how each type of configuration is configured.

You can also understand the configuration files from a visual standpoint by looking at the SIP directory structure diagrams in the following GIF files:

```
dirStructureSIP3a.gif
dirStructureSIP3b.gif
dirStructureSIP3c.gif
```

The files are in the following directory:

```
Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\htdocs\C\help\SIP\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/htdocs/C/help/SIP/
```

Table A-1 SIP XML Configuration Files

Configuration Type	File or Directory
Portal configuration	<i>Windows 2000:</i> %SIP_HOME%\conf\framework\OVPortalConfig.xml <i>UNIX:</i> /opt/OV/SIP/conf/framework/OVPortalConfig.xml
Module registration	<i>Windows 2000:</i> %SIP_HOME%\SIP\registration\ <i>UNIX:</i> /opt/OV/SIP/registration/
Module configurations	<i>Windows 2000:</i> %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\modules\ <i>UNIX:</i> /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/modules/
Management station configurations	<i>Windows 2000:</i> %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\stations\ <i>UNIX:</i> /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/stations/
LDAP authentication configuration	<i>Windows 2000:</i> %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\authentication\LDAP\LDAP.xml <i>UNIX:</i> /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/authentication/LDAP/LDAP.xml

Table A-1 SIP XML Configuration Files (Continued)

Configuration Type	File or Directory
Customer model configuration	<i>Windows 2000:</i> %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\organizations\ <i>UNIX:</i> /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/organizations/
User Role configuration	<i>Windows 2000:</i> %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\roles\ <i>UNIX:</i> /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/roles/
Portal view configuration	<i>Windows 2000:</i> %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\views\ <i>UNIX:</i> /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/views/
User preferences configuration	<i>Windows 2000:</i> %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\users\ <i>UNIX:</i> /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/users/

Portal Configuration

The Portal Configuration file—`OVPortalConfig.xml`—stores global settings that apply to all portals. (Note, however, that the portal header, portal footer, and help topic can be overridden at the portal view level.) Here are the configurations stored in the `OVPortalConfig.xml` file:

- Tracing level (configured through the SIP Administration Pages).
- Maximum log size (configured through direct editing of `OVPortalConfig.xml`).
- Names of the portal header and portal footer JSP files (configured through direct editing of `OVPortalConfig.xml`).
- Authentication provider configuration (configured through the SIP Administration Pages).
- List of skins display through the [Options] button on the SIP button bar (configured through direct editing of `OVPortalConfig.xml`).
- List of refresh rates available through the [Options] button on the SIP button bar (configured through direct editing of `OVPortalConfig.xml`).
- Customer model sources configuration (configured through the SIP Administration Pages).

- Customer model export destinations configuration (configured through the SIP Administration Pages).

Module Registration

Module registration files indicate to the SIP what capabilities the module provides. A registration file defines information, such as a unique ID for the module, a reference to the servlet, the module's associated default help file, and the capabilities of the module.

Module Configuration

Some modules can be configured more extensively than others: some offer global configurations that affect every instance of a particular module; some offer settings you can make to individual module instances; and some offer the ability to configure display filters. All module configurations are specified in XML files.

For instructions on configuring module-specific settings, see the SIP manuals that explain the integrations of individual management products: "Getting Additional Documentation" on page 17.

LDAP Authentication Configuration

If you decide to use the LDAP authentication provider, you need to configure the LDAP configuration file supplied with SIP. In this configuration file, you specify the LDAP server and port, as well as other LDAP-specific information.

Customer Model Configuration

The SIP customer model configuration is made up of multiple registered customer model sources that are either XML files or programs that generate XML. The XML must be based on the SIP Simple Customer Model (SCM), which maps *organizations* to *nodes*, *interfaces*, and *services*, and is defined in an XML DTD.

User Role Configuration

SIP uses an authorization model called the User Role model. By associating users with roles and defining for each role what you want the user to be able to see and do, you achieve portal security. The user role

configuration defines all valid portal users, roles, and management data filters and the associations among them. Most configuration tasks are performed through the SIP Configuration Editor. Only the advanced configurations are done through direct editing of the XML.

Portal View Configuration

A portal view configuration is a configured set of modules and how they appear on tabs. It is also a configured set of portal view attributes, such as name in the portal button bar, skin (portal look and feel), portal refresh rate, default tab, portal header, portal footer, and others.

Portal view configurations are based on several DTDs, for the purpose of modularity:

- The overall DTD—`PortalView.dtd`—defines the overall structure of the portal page.
- The `filter.dtd` describes the filtering elements.
- The remaining DTDs are specific to each module that is configured in the portal view file: For example, `OVALarms.dtd`, `OVBookmarks.dtd`, `OVGeneric.dtd`, etc.

Sample View Files — Supplied sample view files provide a starting point for the creation of new ones. Several samples are provided with SIP.

User Preferences Configuration

Users who are associated with a role that has the editing permissions level of “UserPreferences” or “ViewAdmin” can customize the name that appears in the portal button bar and the skin in which the portal is displayed. Because these two attributes are set in a portal view file that can be associated with multiple users, when a user makes a change to one or both of these attributes, a user preferences configuration is created for the user. The XML file is named for the user’s login.

Changes made to User Options are stored as `<login>.xml` in the User Preferences directory.

Refreshing Modified SIP Configuration and Data Files

Depending upon the type of configuration or data file, changes to those files take effect in different ways:

- Some changes take effect when you **access** the information by displaying or refreshing the portal page.
- Some changes take effect on a scheduled, **periodic** basis, based on a configurable timer that determines the refresh rate for the information.
- Some changes take effect when you perform an administrative action, such as a command, that **forces** information to be refreshed.
- Some changes take effect when you **restart** the servlet engine. Certain data is loaded when the portal servlet is first initialized and is not refreshed unless the servlet engine is stopped and restarted.

Table B-1 on page 303 lists each refresh method described above, and indicates the type of configuration or data that uses each method. It also indicates how to refresh the data or file.

Table B-1 Refresh Model for SIP Configuration and Data Files

Refresh Method	Configuration or Data	How to Refresh the Data or File
Access	Password file LDAP authentication data Portal views User preferences NNM Alarms data NNM Topology data OVO data OVSN data OVIS data OVR data XSL style sheets Java Server Pages (except for <code>common.jsp</code>)	Display or refresh the portal page.

Table B-1 Refresh Model for SIP Configuration and Data Files (Continued)

Refresh Method	Configuration or Data	How to Refresh the Data or File
Periodic	Customer Model	Changes to the Customer Model take effect on a periodic basis, depending upon the value of the timeout attribute in the <code>OVPortalConfig.xml</code> file. This attribute can be set on the Customer Model tab in the SIP Administration Pages.
	Object capabilities data from the NNM object database (<code>ovwdb</code>) used for filtering	Changes take effect on a periodic basis, depending upon the value of the <code>ovwdbTimeout</code> attribute of the <code>CustomerModelSources</code> element in the <code>OVPortalConfig.xml</code> file. This attribute can be set on the Customer Model tab in the SIP Administration Pages.
	NNM Data Collector data	The data used by the Network Device Health module gauges is gathered by NNM according to the schedule (in minutes) specified in the <code>rawDataRefresh</code> attribute in the <code>netHealthConfig.xml</code> file. The NNM data collection configuration, itself, is updated to match current SIP requirements by manual command line entry (<code>ovcolautoconf</code>) or according to a schedule set up by the administrator
	NNM Symbol registration information	If changes are made within NNM to the “Symbol Type” assigned to particular devices, SIP receives the changes according to the schedule established by the <code>symbolFetchRateInMin</code> attribute in the <code>topologyConfig.xml</code> file.

Table B-1 Refresh Model for SIP Configuration and Data Files (Continued)

Refresh Method	Configuration or Data	How to Refresh the Data or File
Force	User Role Model	<p>Changes to the User Role model take effect after you perform a successful Save operation in the SIP Configuration Editor, or rebuild the roles database using the following command:</p> <p><i>Windows 2000:</i> <code>%SIP_HOME%\bin\create_role_db.bat</code> <i>UNIX:</i> <code>/opt/OV/SIP/bin/create_role_db</code></p>
	Customer Model	[Refresh] button on the Customer Model tab in the SIP Administration Pages.
Restart	Module registration Module configuration Authentication provider configuration LDAP authentication configuration SIPPath.properties common.jsp	Stop and restart the servlet engine. For instructions, see “Restarting the Servlet Engine” on page 287.

Refresh Model for SIP Configuration Data
Refreshing Modified SIP Configuration and Data Files

C Rules for Direct Editing of XML Files

Rules for Direct Editing of XML Files

- Make a backup before modifying XML files.
- Understand editing permissions on XML files.
- Validate the XML after you modify it.
- Be careful not to lose changes made through the GUI. This can happen when you edit through the XML file and edit through the GUI at the same time.

Backing Up XML Files

Make a backup of XML configuration files before you customize them. If you edit the file and get incorrect XML syntax, you may want the ability to revert to the previous version of the file.

Understanding Editing Permission on XML Files

When using the editing windows within the SIP portal, the web server needs to have read/write permissions to the underlying files in order to save your changes. The apache web server and SIP run as:

Solaris: user "nobody"

HP-UX: user "www"

At runtime, `umask` is set by the `tomcat.sh` script to `022`, so files are created mode `0644` and directories created mode `0755`.

Therefore, at install time, SIP sets permissions and ownership for files to mode `0644` and directories to mode `0755`. If you add or change anything, make sure directories are owned by the appropriate user specified above, files set to mode `0644`, and directories set to mode `0755`.

For `tomcat` to operate properly, the following directories and all files underneath them need to have the correct permissions set (user as specified above, files set to mode `0644`, and directories are set to mode `0755`):

- `/opt/OV/SIP/tomcat`
(directory only, so `tomcat` can create the work directory when needed)

- /opt/OV/SIP/tomcat/conf
(directory only)
- /opt/OV/SIP/tomcat/logs
(directory, all subdirectories, and all files)
- /opt/OV/SIP/tomcat/webapps
(directory, all subdirectories, and all files)
- /opt/OV/SIP/tomcat/work
(directory, all subdirectories, and all files)

For SIP to operate properly, these directories and all .xml files (not .dtd files) underneath them need to have the correct permissions set (user set to anyone with editing permissions, files set to mode 0644, and directories are set to mode 0755):

- /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/organizations
(directory, all subdirectories, and all .xml files)
- /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/users
(directory, all subdirectories, and all .xml files)
- /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/modules
(directory, all subdirectories, and all .xml files)
- /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/roles
(directory, all subdirectories, and all .xml files)
- /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/views
(directory, all subdirectories, and all .xml files)

Validating XML Files

The Service Information Portal will detect and report an invalid XML configuration file. However, after you make modifications to XML files, you may want to validate your XML syntax.

Provided with SIP is the command `xmlvalidate`, which checks whether the XML file is both well-formed and valid. This command uses the same XML parser as SIP, so if the file passes `xmlvalidate`, it will work with SIP.

For the command to work from outside the `bin` directory, add the following to your `PATH` variable:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME\bin
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/bin

Rules for Direct Editing of XML Files

The correct usage of the `xmlvalidate` command is:

```
xmlvalidate -v <xml filename>
```

An XML file is “well-formed” if it conforms to a minimal set of rules defined for all XML documents. It is “valid” if it conforms to the DTD listed at the beginning of the XML file.

Sometimes an error reported by `xmlvalidate` may not clearly indicate how to fix the problem. For example, a message like “Attribute ‘name’ must be declared for element type ‘XYZ’”, is an indication that the attribute ‘name’ may have been misspelled.

As an alternative to `xmlvalidate`, you can find an XML validation tool for Windows NT at www.xmlspy.com.

Avoiding Loss of Changes

If you are using the portal interface to change a configuration and directly editing the XML configuration file at the same time, be careful not to lose the changes made through the interface by writing out the file over the interface changes.

Port and Protocol Defaults for SIP Framework, Customer Model, and Modules

If you plan to install multiple management products on the same machine, you need to be aware of the default protocols and ports used by product. Following are three tables that list the default port and protocol settings for:

- SIP Framework
- Customer Model
- SIP Modules

Table D-1 SIP Framework Default Port and Protocol Settings

SIP Component	Server Product	Protocol	Port	Configuration
SIP Shared Configuration	SIP	http	80	Protocol and port configurable by changing the value of <code>SIP_SHARE_CONF_DIR</code> in <code>SIPPath.properties</code> file. The default is a local file system directory.
		https	443	
LDAP Authentication	LDAP Server	ldap	389	Use of SSL and the LDAP server port can be configured through the file <code>conf/share/authentication/LDAP/LDAP.xml</code>
		ldap/ssl	636	

Table D-2 Customer Model Default Port and Protocol Settings

SIP Component	Server Product	Protocol	Port	Configuration
Customer Views Import	Customer Views	http	8880/UNIX 80/Windows	Server and port configurable through the URL specified as customer model source in the Customer Model tab of the SIP Administration Pages. E.g., http://server:8880/OvCgi/getcvdata.exe
NNM Object Data Import	NNM 6.1	ovwdb	9999	NNM servers and ovwdb ports configurable through conf/share/modules/NNM/NNM Data.xml
	NNM 6.2	ovwdb	2447	
NNM Data Warehouse Export	NNM	http	8880/UNIX 80/Windows	Server and port configurable through the URL specified as customer model export destination in the Customer Model tab of the SIP Administration Pages. E.g., http://server:8880/OvCgi/ovsipexport.exe
OV Reporter Export	OVR 4.0	http	80	Server and port configurable through the URL specified as customer model export destination in the Customer Model tab of the SIP Administration Pages. E.g., http://server/HPOV_IOPS/cgi-bin/repimport.exe

Port and Protocol Defaults for SIP Framework, Customer Model, and Modules

Table D-3 SIP Modules Default Port and Protocol Settings

SIP Component	Server Product	Protocol	Port	Configuration
Alarms	NNM 6.1	ovalarmsrv	2345	Use SIP Configuration Editor to configure ports (OValarmSrv Port on NNM tab for management stations).
	NNM 6.2, 6.3, and 6.31	ovalarmsrv	2953	
Network Device Health	NNM	http	On UNIX: 8880 for NNM 6.1, 6.2, and 6.3, and port 3443 for NNM 6.31 On Windows: port 80	Use SIP Configuration Editor to configure port (Web Server Port on NNM tab for management stations).
Topology	NNM	ovw	3700 to 3700+n	n=highest OVW session number
	NNM 6.1	ovwdb	9999	Use SIP Configuration Editor to configure ports (OVwDB Port on NNM tab for management stations).
	NNM 6.2, 6.3, and 6.31	ovwdb	2447	
	NNM	http	On UNIX: 8880 for NNM 6.1, 6.2, and 6.3, and port 3443 for NNM 6.31 On Windows: port 80	Use SIP Configuration Editor to configure ports (Web Server Port on NNM tab for management stations).
Internet Services	OVIS 3.5, 4.0	http	80	Use SIP Configuration Editor to configure protocol and port (OVIS tab for management stations).

Table D-3 SIP Modules Default Port and Protocol Settings (Continued)

SIP Component	Server Product	Protocol	Port	Configuration
OVO Messages	OVO for UNIX	OVO DB	1521	Use SIP Configuration Editor to configure ports (OVO tab for management stations).
	OVO for Windows	http	80	
		https	443	
OVSN	opsvcterm	7278		
Service Browser, Service Cards, Service Graph, Service Health, Custom Service View	OVSN	opsvcterm	7278	Use SIP Configuration Editor to configure ports (OVO tab for management stations).
Service Desk 4.0, Service Desk 4.0 for Specialists	OVSD 4.0	http	80	Use SIP Configuration Editor to configure Service Desk server through the Role Property ServiceDesk.SSPserver. Web server port can be configured through the module default XML file or the module instance.
NNM Reports, OVO Reports, OVR Performance Reports	OVR	http	80	Use SIP Configuration Editor to configure protocol and port (Reporting Station tab for management stations).

Table D-3 SIP Modules Default Port and Protocol Settings (Continued)

SIP Component	Server Product	Protocol	Port	Configuration
Bookmarks	Various	http	80	Server, port, and protocol configurable through the URL specified through the Bookmarks tab of the SIP Administration Pages or the Bookmarks module edit page accessed from the module title bar.
		https	443	
Message Board	SIP	file system		
Generic Module	Various	http	80	Server, port, and protocol configurable through the URL specified as the href for the module default XML file or the module instance.
		https	443	

E Configuring Basic Features of the User Role Model Using XML

Configuring the User Role Model Through XML

The user role files are located in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\roles\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/roles/

Creating a User Role Package and Adding It to the User Role Model

1. In the roles directory, create a user role package file by copying and renaming the supplied package.xml file. This file is supplied as a starting point for new user role packages and is located in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\roles\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/roles/

2. Add the new package to the User Role model by adding an entry for it in the following file:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\roles\index.xml
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/roles/index.xml

For example:

```
<UserRolePackageRef href=" <new_package>.xml" />
```

3. Save and close the index.xml file.
4. In the package file, define the new roles, referring to the following instructions and to the Role element information in Table E-5 on page 327.

Creating Roles

Roles are defined in user role package configuration files. These files contain some set of users and roles and together define all the users and roles that make up the User Role model. All users and roles can be defined in a single file, or they can be partitioned into multiple files (for example, one for each customer or organization).

The package files define the `UserRolePackage` element shown in Figure E-2 and described in Table E-3. You can name the package files anything you want as long as you reference them in the index file.

Choosing the Portal View for a Role

A portal view defines what someone in a given role is allowed to see through the portal.

Assuming that you have already created portal views for the roles that you are now creating, determine which portal view you want to associate with each role. Portal view files are stored in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\views\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/views/

If you have not yet created portal views, see Chapter 6, “Customizing Portal Views,” on page 109.

For a description of the `PortalViewRef` element and attributes, see Table E-7 on page 328.

Configuring a Role So Changes Are Not Made to an Original Portal View File

Refer to the `copy` attribute of the `PortalViewRef` element in Table E-7 on page 328.

Choosing the Level of Edit Permissions for a Role

See Table E-8 on page 331.

Overriding the Edit Permissions Level

If you want to change the edit permissions level for a user but you do not want to create a new role, you can override the edit permissions defined on the role itself. For more information, see the `EditPermissions` element in Table E-6 on page 328.

Defining Management Data for a Role

Before you define the management data for a role, you need to verify that the customer and their associated resources are defined in the Customer Model. In the `OVPortalConfig.xml` file, the `CustomerModel hrefs`

Configuring the User Role Model Through XML

indicate the names and locations of the customer model sources. Look in those files and other customer model sources and verify that the customer (organization) and resources are defined.

Table E-1 Examples of Valid MgmtData Element Values

Data to Be Presented	
All Data	<p>All known data should be presented; no data should be filtered out. This is a <code>MgmtData</code> element that has no <code>orgName</code> attribute and no <code>OrganizationFilter</code> child element.</p> <pre><MgmtData/></pre>
No Data	<p>No data should be presented. This is a <code>MgmtData</code> element that has no <code>orgName</code> attribute and an empty <code>OrganizationFilter</code> child element.</p> <pre><MgmtData> <OrganizationFilter/> </MgmtData></pre>
Data for a Single Organization	<p>Data for a single organization (or customer) should be presented. This is a <code>MgmtData</code> element that has an <code>orgName</code> attribute and no <code>OrganizationFilter</code> child element.</p> <pre><MgmtData orgName="Acme" /></pre>

Table E-1 Examples of Valid MgmtData Element Values (Continued)

Data to Be Presented	
<p>Data for Multiple Organizations</p>	<p>Data for multiple organizations (or customers) should be presented. This is a MgmtData element that has a non-empty OrganizationFilter child element.</p> <pre> <MgmtData name="GoldCustomers"> <OrganizationFilter> <OrganizationRef href="Acme" /> <OrganizationRef href="Nabob" /> <OrganizationRef href="Aureum" /> </OrganizationFilter> </MgmtData> <MgmtData name="GoldCustomers"> <OrganizationFilter> <OrganizationRef href="Acme" /> <OrganizationRef href="Nabob" /> <OrganizationRef href="Aureum" /> </OrganizationFilter> </MgmtData> <MgmtData name="GoldCustomers"> <OrganizationFilter> <OrganizationRef href="Acme" /> <OrganizationRef href="Nabob" /> <OrganizationRef href="Aureum" /> </OrganizationFilter> </MgmtData> <MgmtData name="GoldCustomers"> <OrganizationFilter> <OrganizationRef href="Acme" /> <OrganizationRef href="Nabob" /> <OrganizationRef href="Aureum" /> </OrganizationFilter> </MgmtData> <MgmtData name="GoldCustomers"> <OrganizationFilter> <OrganizationRef href="Acme" /> <OrganizationRef href="Nabob" /> <OrganizationRef href="Aureum" /> </OrganizationFilter> </MgmtData> </pre>

Configuring the User Role Model Through XML

Setting Role Properties

Refer to “Setting Role Properties” on page 322 and “Giving Your Module Access to SIP Data Through Variable Substitution” on page 177.

Creating Users

Like roles, users are defined in user role package configuration files. Again, these files contain some set of users and roles and together define all the users and roles that make up the User Role model. All users and roles can be defined in a single file, or they can be partitioned into multiple files (for example, one for each customer or organization).

To Create Users

In the `roles` directory, open the user role package file in which you want to define the users. This file is somewhere under the following directory:

```
Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\roles\  
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/roles/
```

5. In the package file, define the new users, referring to the following instructions and to the User element information in Table E-4 on page 326. For example:

```
<User name="operator" displayName="Operator"  
initialRole="NOC" />
```

End the user XML definition with either “/” or `</User>`.

NOTE

Each user must have an `initialRole`. This attribute is mandatory and specifies the role that the user will be in when he or she first logs in to SIP.

Assigning Roles to Users

After you have defined the roles, you can assign to each user which roles (in addition to the `defaultRole`) you want them to have.

- Use the `RoleRef` element and `href` and `title` attributes to associate a role with a given user. For example:

```
<User name="operator" displayName="Operator"
      initialRole="NOC">
  <RoleRef href="NOC"/>

  <RoleRef href="AcmeTechnical" title="Acme Technical"/>
  <RoleRef href="AcmeBusiness" title="Acme Business"/>
</User>
```

The title attribute is only needed if you want to override the title defined for the role.

Assigning Multiple Roles Using Wildcards

The RoleRef href can contain wildcards using Perl5 pattern matching. This allows multiple roles to be associated with the user using a single href. All roles that match the pattern specified by the href are added to the list of available roles for the user. For example, an href value of “. *” matches all roles. An href value of “Acme. *” matches all roles that start with “Acme”.

If a RoleRef with wildcards has an EditPermissions child element, the user gets the specified edit permissions for all roles that match the pattern.

User Role Model Elements and Attributes

The user role DTD is located in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\roles\UserRole.dtd
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/roles/UserRole.dtd

Figure E-1 Sample index.xml File

```
<UserRoleModel>
  <UserRolePackageRef href="default.xml"/>
  <UserRolePackageRef href="samples.xml"/>
</UserRoleModel>
```

Figure E-2 Sample package.xml file

```
<UserRolePackage title="Sample Users and Roles">
  <!-- Users -->
  <User name="admin" displayName="Admin" initialRole="Welcome">
    <RoleRef href="Welcome"/>
    <RoleRef href="LiveDemo"/>
    <RoleRef href="AcmeTechnical" title="Acme Technical">
```

Configuring the User Role Model Through XML

```
        <EditPermission level="ViewAdmin"/></RoleRef>
</User>
<!-- Roles -->
<Role name="Welcome" title="Welcome">
  <PortalViewRef href="welcome.xml"/>
  <EditPermission level="UserPreferences"/>
  <MgmtDataRef href="NoData"/>
</Role>

<Role name="LiveDemo" title="Live Demo">
  <PortalViewRef href="samples/liveDemo.xml"/>
  <EditPermission level="ViewAdmin"/>
  <MgmtDataRef href="AllData"/>
</Role>

<Role name="AcmeTechnical" title="Technical">
  <PortalViewRef href="samples/technical.xml"
    copy="Acme/technical.xml"/>
  <EditPermission level="UserPreferences"/>
  <MgmtDataRef href="AcmeOrg"/>
</Role>
<!-- Management Data -->
<!-- This will show data only for the "Acme" organization -->
<MgmtData name="AcmeOrg">
  <OrganizationFilter>
    <OrganizationRef href="Acme"/>
  </OrganizationFilter>
</MgmtData>
```

NOTE

Sample user role package files can be found in the following two directories:

Windows 2000:

%SIP_HOME%\conf\share\roles\
%SIP_HOME%\samples\authorization\roles\

UNIX:

/opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/roles/
/opt/OV/SIP/samples/authorization/roles/

Table E-2 User Role Model Elements and Attributes

Elements and Attributes	Description
UserRoleModel	The root element of the <code>/conf/roles/index.xml</code> file. This file is an index to all packages that together make up the User Role model. Each package is stored in a separate XML file. A User Role model consists of one or more packages.
UserRolePackageRef	The child element of the <code>UserRoleModel</code> element. Each <code>UserRolePackageRef</code> element refers to a <code>UserRolePackage</code> .
href	An attribute of the <code>UserRolePackageRef</code> element. Specifies the file containing the user role package information. The value of <code>href</code> is interpreted as a filename relative to the <code>conf/share/roles</code> directory. It can include subdirectories. For example, the <code>href</code> value <code>gold/Apex.xml</code> is interpreted as the file <code>conf/share/roles/gold/Apex.xml</code> . The file so specified must be an XML document with <code>UserRolePackage</code> as the root element.

Table E-3 UserRolePackage Element

Elements and Attributes	Description
UserRolePackage	The root element of each user role package configuration file. Contains a set of user and role definitions. It can also contain management data definitions. A package can, for example, define all the users and roles for a particular customer or organization. Users in one package can reference <code>Role</code> and <code>MgmtData</code> definitions in another package.
title	An attribute of the <code>UserRolePackage</code> element. Optional descriptive string that describes the purpose of the package.
defaultMgmtData	An attribute of the <code>UserRolePackage</code> element. A reference to a <code>MgmtData</code> element. Specifies the management data to use for any role defined in the package that has a management data value of <code>DefaultMgmtData</code> . Makes it easy to specify the management data for all roles in the package in one place.

Configuring the User Role Model Through XML**Table E-4 User Element**

Elements and Attributes	Description
User	A child element of <code>UserRolePackage</code> element. Defines a valid SIP user. <code>User</code> element has <code>RoleRef</code> child elements. This list specifies the set of roles for the user. The order in which the <code>RoleRef</code> elements appear for a user determine the order in which the roles appear in the role drop-down menu in the user interface.
name	An attribute of <code>User</code> , <code>name</code> is a unique identifier that corresponds to the login name by which the user was authenticated to SIP.
displayName	An attribute of <code>User</code> , <code>displayName</code> is the name of the user that will be displayed in the portal welcome banner in the user interface, unless it is overridden in the user preferences.
initialRole	<p>An attribute of <code>User</code>, <code>initialRole</code> is a mandatory attribute that specifies the role that the user will be in when he or she first logs in to SIP. It is a reference to a <code>Role</code> element. Because this is a required attribute, user must be defined as having at least one role.</p> <p>If the “initial role” does not also appear in the list of roles for the user, it is implicitly added to the end of the roles for that user.</p>
defaultUser	An attribute of <code>User</code> , <code>defaultUser</code> is a flag indicating that the user entry should be used as the “default user.” This means that when a user logs in with a valid login name and there is no <code>User</code> entry for that login name and there is no portal view file named <code>conf/share/views/login.xml</code> , the user has all roles defined for the default user.

Table E-5 Role Element

Elements and Attributes	Description
Role	<p>A child element of <code>UserRolePackage</code> element. Defines a role. A user can have multiple roles, and multiple users can share a role. The <code>Role</code> element has four child elements that together define what a user operating in the role can see and do. Child elements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>PortalViewRef</code> • <code>EditPermission</code> • <code>MgmtData</code>, <code>MgmtDataRef</code>, or <code>DefaultMgmtData</code> • <code>Properties</code>
name	<p>An attribute of <code>Role</code>, <code>name</code> is a unique identifier for the <code>Role</code>. The <code>name</code> value is used in the <code>href</code> attribute of the <code>RoleRef</code> element to refer to this role.</p> <p>Only one role with a given name is allowed in the User Role model. Subsequent roles with the same name are ignored. The name must be unique across all user role packages.</p>
title	<p>An attribute of <code>Role</code>, <code>title</code> is a descriptive name for the role. The <code>title</code> is the string that appears in the drop-down list of roles presented to this user in the user interface. The title for a role does not need to be unique.</p>
defaultRole	<p>An attribute of <code>Role</code>, <code>defaultRole</code> is a flag indicating that the role should be used as the “default role.” This means that when a user logs in with a valid login name and there is no <code>User</code> entry for that login name and there is a portal view file named <code>conf/share/views/login.xml</code>, that view is displayed to the user and the edit permissions and management data are determined by the default role.</p> <p>When this role is used as the default role (because it can also be used as a normal role), the <code>PortalViewRef</code> child element is ignored.</p> <p>Only the first <code>Role</code> element is recognized as the default role; any subsequent <code>defaultRole</code> flags are ignored.</p>

Configuring the User Role Model Through XML

Table E-6 **RoleRef Element**

Elements and Attributes	Description
RoleRef	A child element of the Role element. Allows multiple users to refer to the same role. The referenced role can be in any of the user role package files.
href	<p>An attribute of RoleRef, href is a reference to a Role element. It must be the same as the name attribute of a Role element.</p> <p>Can contain wildcards using Perl5 pattern matching. This allows multiple roles to be associated with the user using a single href. All roles that match the pattern specified by the href are added to the list of available roles for the user. For example, an href value of “.*” matches all roles. An href value of “Acme.*” matches all roles that start with “Acme”.</p> <p>If a RoleRef with wildcards has an EditPermissions child element, the user gets the specified edit permissions for all roles that match the pattern.</p>
title	<p>An optional attribute of RoleRef, title can be used to override the displayed role name as seen by the current user.</p> <p>If the title is specified for a RoleRef that contains wildcards, it serves as a prefix for the title of each of the roles that the regular expression matches.</p>
EditPermissions	An optional child element of RoleRef. Allows a particular user to override the edit permissions defined on the role itself.

Table E-7 **PortalViewRef Element**

Elements and Attributes	Description
PortalViewRef	A child element of the Role element. References the portal view for this role. The portal view determines the set of tabs and modules that the user sees.

Table E-7 PortalViewRef Element (Continued)

Elements and Attributes	Description
href	An attribute of PortalViewRef, href specifies the file containing the PortalView element. The value of href is interpreted as a filename relative to the conf/share/views directory. It can include subdirectories. For example, the href value "NetOperator.xml" is interpreted as the file "conf/share/views/NetOperator.xml. The file so specified must be an XML document with PortalView as the root element.

Table E-7 PortalViewRef Element (Continued)

Elements and Attributes	Description
copy	<p>An optional attribute of <code>PortalViewRef</code>, <code>copy</code> allows multiple roles to share a portal view file, and yet have a new copy of the portal view created if the portal view is modified (through GUI editing) through one of the roles.</p> <p>For example, you could set up one <code>NetOperator.xml</code> portal view file and have 50 roles (one each for 50 customers) share the file. Any changes made in <code>NetOperator.xml</code> would be seen by all 50 roles/customers.</p> <p>However, you could use the <code>copy</code> attribute to give editing permissions to five of these roles/customers in such a way that changes do not affect the original view file. Note that edit permissions are defined through the level. The “copy” attribute just determines where the changes go. When each of these five customers edits the portal view, it would be saved as a new portal view file under the file name specified by the <code>copy</code> attribute.</p> <p>Thus, the <code>copy</code> attribute specifies the filename to use to save a modified version of the original portal view. The value of <code>copy</code> is interpreted as a filename relative to the <code>conf/share/views</code> directory. It can include subdirectories. For example, the <code>href</code> value “<code>Apex/NetOperator.xml</code>” is interpreted as the file “<code>conf/share/views/Apex/NetOperator.xml</code>”. The file specified by “copy” may or may not exist. SIP will create it as needed.</p> <p>Once the “copy” version of the portal view has been created, the role will use that file as the view file for the role (that is, it will no longer use the portal view file specified by the <code>href</code> attribute).</p> <p>Note that the <code>create_role_db</code> command creates view directories required by “copy” view files if they do not already exist. In the example just cited, it would create the directory <code>conf/share/views/Apex</code>.</p>

Table E-8 EditPermissions Element

Elements and Attributes	Description
EditPermissions	A child element of the Role element. Specifies the editing operations the user can perform through SIP.
level	<p>An attribute of EditPermissions, level specifies the level of editing operations permitted. Each level consists of an implicit set of operations. The levels are ordered. Each level allows all operations defined by the previous level. The three levels are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ReadOnly • UserPreferences • ViewAdmin <p>For an explanation of each level see “Understanding the User Role Model” on page 76.</p>

Table E-9 MgmtData Element

Elements and Attributes	Description
MgmtData	<p>A child element of UserRolePackage element. Specifies what management data will be presented when the associated role is used. The MgmtData element can appear directly with a Role, or it can be defined independently and referenced by multiple roles. The MgmtData element is essentially a list of organizations (or customers) as defined in the customer model in the OVPortalConfig.xml file. This list of organizations is translated at run-time into a list of resources (services, nodes, interfaces) that determine what information is presented to the user.</p> <p>For examples of valid MgmtData element values, see Table E-1 on page 320.</p>

Configuring the User Role Model Through XML**Table E-9 MgmtData Element (Continued)**

Elements and Attributes	Description
name	<p>An attribute of MgmtData, name is the unique identifier for the MgmtData. This is the value used in the href attribute of the MgmtDataRef element to refer to this management data specification.</p> <p>Only one management data specification with a given name is allowed in the User Role model. If a subsequent one is found with the same name, it is ignored.</p>
OrganizationFilter	<p>An optional child element of the MgmtData element. Allows multiple organizations (or customers) to be specified for the “management data.”</p> <p>Tip for SIP 1.0 users: OrganizationFilter is the same as the SIP 1.0 CustomerFilter.</p>
orgName	<p>An attribute of MgmtData, orgName specifies the name of an organization (or customer) to use to determine the management data to present. This is provided as a shortcut so that a OrganizationFilter element does not need to be defined if there is only a single organization for the “management data” definition.</p> <p>If both the orgName attribute and a child OrganizationFilter is specified, the organization specified by “orgName” is added to the list of organizations listed in the OrganizationFilter.</p>
MgmtDataRef	<p>A child element of a Role element. MgmtDataRef is a way of specifying the management data for a role. It allows multiple roles to refer to the same “management data.” The referenced “management data” can be in defined in any of the user role package files.</p>
href	<p>An attribute of MgmtDataRef, href is a reference to a MgmtData element. It must be the same as the name attribute of a MgmtData element.</p>

Table E-9 MgmtData Element (Continued)

Elements and Attributes	Description
DefaultMgmtData	A child element of the Role element. An indication that the role should use the MgmtData element specified by the defaultMgmtData attribute of the UserRolePackage element. This element is used to make this “inheritance” explicit.

Table E-10 Properties Element

Elements and Attributes	Description
Properties	An optional child element of the Role element. A list of Property elements.
Property	A child element of the Properties element. Specifies a role property name and value that can be used by modules, including the generic module.
name	An attribute of Property, specifies the name of the role property.
value	An attribute of Property, specifies the value of the role property.

Configuring Basic Features of the User Role Model Using XML

Configuring the User Role Model Through XML

F **Configuring the Message Board and Bookmarks Modules Using XML**

Creating Messages Through Direct Editing of XML

When directly editing XML files, see “Rules for Direct Editing of XML Files” on page 308. If you need information on the XML elements, see “Message Board DTD” on page 340 and “Portal View DTD” on page 140.

1. Create an HTML file with the contents of the message.

The name of the HTML file must be unique, contain no spaces, and contain no non-alpha-numeric special characters. Also, the file name cannot begin with a forward slash (/) or with two periods followed by a forward slash (./).

2. Put the file in the messageboard directory or in a sub-directory of the messageboard directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\modules\messageboard\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/modules/messageboard/

3. Open the messageDisplayNames.xml file also located in the messageboard directory, and add a Message element that defines a title (title attribute) for the newly defined message file (file attribute), as shown in the following example:

```
<MessageDisplayNames>
<Message file="default" title="Default Message Board"/>
<Message file="newMessage.html" title="What's New at
Acme"/>
</MessageDisplayNames>
```

If your message is in a sub-directory of the messageboard directory, specify the file path relative to the messageboard directory, e.g., file="subdir/mymessage".

If you need information on the XML elements, see “Message Display Names DTD” on page 337.

NOTE

Notice that the file name can include the file extension or not.

4. When you are finished editing it, save and close the file.

5. Once the message files are in the `messageboard` directory, you can use the web interface to add, remove, rearrange them in the portal view file. Do so by clicking the [Edit] button on the Message Board module title bar.

Message Display Names DTD

The `messageDisplayNames.xml` file contains mappings between message file names and the title that will be displayed in the portal. `messageDisplayNames.xml` is also used as an index of available messages. The entries in this file become the list of Available Messages in the Message Board Edit GUI that is accessible when the user has ViewAdmin permissions.

The DTD is reproduced below. A complete example of a `MessageDisplayNames` element follows:

```
<MessageDisplayNames>
  <Message file="default" title="Default Message Board"/>
  <Message file="newMessage.html" title="What's New at Acme"/>
</MessageDisplayNames>
```

The DTD is stored in:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\modules\messageboard\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/modules/messageboard/

Figure F-1

messageDisplayNames.dtd

```
<!-- messageDisplayNames.dtd -->
<!-- Copyright (c) 2001 Hewlett-Packard Company -->
<!-- $Revision: /main/BACCHUS/1 $ -->
<!-- $Date: 2001/01/16 20:25 UTC $ -->
<!ELEMENT MessageDisplayNames (Message*)>
<!ELEMENT Message EMPTY>
```

Creating Messages Through Direct Editing of XML

```
<!ATTLIST Message  
  file CDATA #REQUIRED  
  title CDATA #REQUIRED>
```

Table F-1 Message Attributes

Attribute	Description
file	A required attribute of Message, specifies the name of the file that contains the message content and that is located in the messageboard directory. The name of file must match "filename" in the portal view XML Message element.
title	A required attribute of Message, specifies the message title that should be displayed in the portal interface.

Editing XML to Select Messages to Display in a Portal View

To add or remove messages that are displayed in a portal, you must edit the associated portal view file. Portal view files are located in or below the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\views\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/views/

When directly editing XML files, see “Rules for Direct Editing of XML Files” on page 308. If you need information on the XML elements, see “Message Board DTD” on page 340 and “Portal View DTD” on page 140.

Assigning Messages to a Portal View Using XML

1. Using an ASCII editor, open the portal view file that you want to display a particular message through.
2. Find the MessageBoard element, and edit it to add or delete the messages you want to display. Following is an example of a Message Board module instance with two messages defined for the MessageBoard element:

```
<ModuleInstance
  classid="com.hp.ov.portal.modules.messageboard"
  help="/OvSipDocs/C/help/SIP/messageView.html"
  id="module9" rollupState="down" title="Message Board">
  <MessageBoard>
    <Message filename="default"/>
    <Message filename="Welcome"/>
  </MessageBoard>
</ModuleInstance>
```

Messages are displayed in the order in which they appear in this file. “filename” is the only attribute of Message. It specifies the name of the file that contains the message content. The file is located in the messageboard directory.

3. Save and close the portal view file.
4. Log in as a user who has access to the appropriate role. Verify that the message was added.

Removing Messages from a Portal View Using XML

1. Using an ASCII editor, open the portal view file from which you want to remove a particular message.
2. Find the `MessageBoard` element, and delete the message filename of the message you no longer want to display through this portal view.
3. Save and close the portal view file.
4. Select a role that displays this portal view, and verify that the message was removed.

Message Board DTD

The `OVMMessageBoard.dtd` file is used to define elements in the portal view file. The DTD is reproduced below. A complete example of the `MessageBoard` module in a portal view file follows:

```
<MessageBoard>
  <Message filename="default"/>
  <Message filename="newMessage.html"/>
</MessageBoard>
```

Figure F-2

OVMMessageBoard.dtd

```
<!-- OVMMessageBoard.dtd -->
<!-- Copyright (c) 2000 Hewlett-Packard Company -->
<!-- $Revision: /main/BACCHUS/1 $ -->
<!-- $Date: 2001/11/07 00:56 UTC $ -->

<!ELEMENT MessageBoard (Message)+>

<!ATTLIST MessageBoard
  id CDATA #IMPLIED>

<!ELEMENT Message EMPTY>

<!ATTLIST Message
  filename CDATA #REQUIRED>
```

Creating Groups of Shared Bookmarks Through Direct Editing of XML

There are two parts to setting up a group of shared bookmarks: creating the shared group entry in the `sharedBookmarks.xml` file, and adding a reference to the shared group into portal view files.

1. Using an ASCII editor, open the `sharedBookmarks.xml` file located in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\modules\bookmarks\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/modules/bookmarks/

2. Add a `SharedGroup` element with a `Group` child element, as shown in the following example, which shows two groups being shared:

```
<?xml version="1.0" standalone="no"?>
<!DOCTYPE SharedBookmarks SYSTEM "sharedBookmarks.dtd">
<SharedBookmarks>
  <Group name="hplist" title="HP Links (Shared Group)">
    <Entry title="HP OpenView Home"
      href="http://www.openview.hp.com"
      target="hpwin"/>
    <Entry title="HP Home" href="http://www.hp.com"
      target="hpwin"/>
  </Group>
  <Group name="group1" title="Group 1 Title">
    <Entry title="entry11" href="href1"
      target="group1win"/>
    <Entry title="entry12" href="href2"
      target="group1win"/>
  </Group>
</SharedBookmarks>
```

NOTE

The value of `Group name` is what is referenced from a portal view file as a way of designating this group as able to be shared.

3. Save and close the `sharedBookmarks.xml` file.
4. Open the portal view file to which you want to add a shared bookmark entry.

Creating Groups of Shared Bookmarks Through Direct Editing of XML

5. Find the Bookmarks module and add the SharedGroup entry. Define the name string, which is used to look up the group in the sharedBookmarks.xml file. See the example below:

```
<Bookmarks>
  <Group title="Generic Net Bookmarks">
    <Entry href="/OvSipDocs/C/demo/operations/Op_Trouble_Shooting.htm"
      target="bookmarkwin" title="Operations Troubleshooting"/>
    <Entry href="http://www.hp.com/e-services" target="bookmarkwin"
      title="Generic Net Primary Site"/>
  </Group>
  <SharedGroup name="hplist"/>
</Bookmarks>
```

6. Save and close the portal view file.

Shared Bookmarks DTD

The sharedBookmarks.dtd file is reproduced below and explained in Table F-3 on page 343 and Table F-2 on page 343. It is stored in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\modules\bookmarks\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/modules/bookmarks/

Figure F-3

sharedBookmarks.dtd

```
<!-- sharedBookmarks.dtd -->
<!-- Copyright (c) 2001 Hewlett-Packard Company -->
<!-- $Revision: /main/BACCHUS/2 $ -->
<!-- $Date: 2001/01/30 22:23 UTC $ -->
<!ELEMENT SharedBookmarks (Group*)>
<!ELEMENT Group (Entry*)>
<!ATTLIST Group name CDATA #REQUIRED
  title CDATA #REQUIRED>
<!ELEMENT Entry EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST Entry title CDATA #REQUIRED
  target CDATA "_self"
  href CDATA #REQUIRED>
```

Table F-2 **Attribute of the Group Element**

Attribute	Description
name	A required attribute, name refers to the name of a shared group as referenced in the portal view file.

Table F-3 **Attributes of the Entry Element**

Attribute	Description
href	A required attribute, href refers to the URL link for the bookmark.
title	A required attribute, Title refers to the name of the link to be presented in the portal view.
target	A optional attribute, target refers to the name of a new window to create (or reuse) when opening the URL so that the current portal window is not replaced. The value of target should not contain spaces.

Displaying Bookmarks in a Portal View Through Direct Editing of XML

To add or change bookmarks that are displayed in a portal, you must edit the associated portal view file. Portal view files are located under the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\views\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/views/

When directly editing XML files, see “Rules for Direct Editing of XML Files” on page 308. If you need information on the XML elements, see “Bookmarks DTD” on page 347, “Shared Bookmarks DTD” on page 342, and “Portal View DTD” on page 140.

Here are three important terms you need to understand:

- **Entry:** A bookmark `Entry` is a single hyperlink that will be displayed in a portal view.
- **Group:** A bookmark `Group` is a logical grouping of entries. It consists of a `Group` element, which in turn contains a list of `Entry` elements described above. When displayed in a portal, this set of entries is preceded by the name of the group.

NOTE

A group can only be created through direct editing of the XML, not through the Bookmarks tab in the SIP Administration Pages.

- **SharedGroup:** A bookmark `SharedGroup` functions the same as the `Group` described above, with one distinction: instead of including the `Entry` list within the portal view file, a `SharedGroup` is a link to a bookmark group contained in a central location. This facilitates easy updates to many customer portals simultaneously. One may add the `SharedGroup` to a set of customers and then update the single copy to update the group for all of them.

Adding a Bookmark Entry to a Portal View

1. Using an ASCII editor, open the portal view file to which you want to add a bookmark entry.

2. Find the Bookmarks module and add the Entry element as shown in the following example:

```
<ModuleInstance
classid="com.hp.ov.portal.modules.bookmarks"
  display="yes" id="BookmarksModule-Demol"
  rollupState="down">
  <Bookmarks>
    <Entry href="http://www.hp.com/e-services"
      target="bookmarkwin"
      title="Generic Net Primary Site"/>
    <Entry href="http://www.hp.com" target="bookmarkwin"
      title="HP Primary Site"/>
    <Entry href="http://www.openview.hp.com"
      target="bookmarkwin"
      title="HP OpenView Site"/>
  </Bookmarks>
```

The Entry element has three attributes:

- href - The URL link for the bookmark.
- title - The name of the link to be presented in the portal view.
- target - The name of a new window to create (or reuse) when opening the URL so that the current portal window is not replaced. Optional. The value of target should not contain spaces.

3. When you are finished, save and close the portal view file.

Grouping Entries

You can organize entries into a group under a group title. The Group element has one attribute, the title:

- title - Displayed before any contained Entry elements in an alternate style as a heading for the group.

See the example below:

```
<ModuleInstance classid="com.hp.ov.portal.modules.bookmarks"
  display="yes" id="BookmarksModule-Demol"
  rollupState="down">
  <Bookmarks>
    <Group title="My Favorite OpenView Products">
      <Entry title="Service Information Portal"
        href="http://openview.hp.com/products/servinfoportal/index.asp"
```

Displaying Bookmarks in a Portal View Through Direct Editing of XML

```
        target="bookmarkwin"/>
<Entry title="PolicyXpert"
  href="http://openview.hp.com/products/policyexpert/index.asp"
  target="bookmarkwin"/>
<Entry title="Network Node Manager"
  href="http://openview.hp.com/products/nnm/index.asp"
  target="bookmarkwin"/>
</Group>
</Bookmarks>
```

Changing the Order of Bookmarks Using XML

The portal displays bookmarks in the order in which they appear in the portal view file. To change the order, edit the portal view file (or, as appropriate, the `sharedBookmarks.xml`) to rearrange the order of the bookmark `Entry`, `Group`, and `SharedGroup` elements.

1. Using an ASCII editor, open the portal view file that has the Bookmarks module you want to modify.
2. Find the Bookmarks module and reorder the `Entry` elements, as desired.
3. When you are finished, save and close the portal view file.
4. To change the content of a `SharedGroup`, you need to modify it in the `sharedBookmarks.xml` file located in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\modules\bookmarks\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/modules/bookmarks/

Removing Bookmarks From a Portal Using XML

To remove bookmarks from a portal view, edit the portal view file and delete any `Entry`, `Group`, or `SharedGroup` that you want to remove. If you think you might want to use the bookmark again sometime, instead of deleting it, comment out the element by preceding it with "`<!--`" and ending it with "`-->`".

1. Using an ASCII editor, open the portal view file that has the Bookmarks module you want to remove.
2. Find the Bookmarks module and delete the `Entry` elements, as desired.
3. When you are finished, save and close the portal view file.

4. To delete the content of a SharedGroup, you need to modify it in the sharedBookmarks.xml file located in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\modules\bookmarks\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/modules/bookmarks/

NOTE

Any changes to this central file will affect all user roles that share this group. If you want to modify the group for one portal view only, you need to either copy the Group into the portal view file associated with the role or create a new SharedGroup for this role.

Bookmarks DTD

The OVBookmarks.dtd is duplicated below and stored in the following directory:

Windows 2000: %SIP_HOME%\conf\share\views\
UNIX: /opt/OV/SIP/conf/share/views/

Following is a complete module instance that can be inserted directly into a portal view file. This code is automatically inserted into a portal view when a new bookmarks module is added from the portal interface.

Figure F-4 Default Bookmarks Module Instance

```
<Bookmarks>
  <Entry title="HP Primary Site" href="http://www.hp.com"
    target="bookmarkwin"/>
  <Entry title="HP OpenView Site" href="http://www.openview.hp.com"
    target="bookmarkwin"/>
  <Entry title="Service Information Portal"
    href="http://openview.hp.com/products/servinfoportal/index.asp"
    target="bookmarkwin"/>
  <SharedGroup name="hpsipintegrations"/>
</Bookmarks>
```

Table F-4 Child Elements of the Bookmarks Element

Element	Description
Entry	A single hyperlink that will be displayed in a portal view.
Group	A logical grouping of entries. Contains Entry elements that are grouped under a title. ("group" is the only bookmarks element that can only not be created through the Bookmarks tab in the SIP Administration Pages. It can only be created through direct editing of the XML.)
SharedGroup	Functions like the Group element above, with one distinction: instead of including the Entry list within the portal view file, a SharedGroup is a link to a bookmark group contained in a central location. This facilitates easy updates to many portals simultaneously. You may add the SharedGroup to multiple portal views and then update the single file to update the group for all of them.

Table F-5 Entry Attributes

Parameter	Description
title	The name of the link to be presented in the customer's portal.
href	The URL link for the bookmark.
target	Optional. Provides the name of a new window to create (or reuse) when opening the URL so that the current portal window is not replaced. The value of target should not contain spaces.

Table F-6 **Group Attributes**

Parameter	Description
title	Displayed before any contained <code>Entry</code> elements in an alternate style as a heading for the group.

Table F-7 **SharedGroup Attributes**

Parameter	Description
name	The name of a <code>SharedGroup</code> listed in the portal view file. When the portal finds the matching group in the <code>sharedBookmarks.xml</code> file, it interprets the matching group as a local bookmark group. <code>SharedGroup</code> can consist of zero or more <code>Group</code> definitions.

Configuring the Message Board and Bookmarks Modules Using XML
Displaying Bookmarks in a Portal View Through Direct Editing of XML

Uninstalling HP OpenView Service Information Portal

Be aware that uninstalling SIP will remove all of your portal configurations. If you want to save your customized files and directories, see *SIP Installation Guide* (*SIP_Install_Guide.pdf*) BEFORE uninstalling SIP.

NOTE

After uninstalling SIP, you may find that some installation logs remain on the file system. If you prefer to remove them, go to the SIP home directory and delete them.

On Windows 2000

The state of your IIS Admin Service after uninstall will be the same as before uninstall.

1. Start: Settings->Control Panel->Add/Remove Programs.
2. Scroll down and select the version of SIP that you want to uninstall, and click [Add/Remove].
3. A prompt indicates that all files will be removed. Answer “yes” to continue uninstalling SIP.

On HP-UX and Solaris

1. As root, uninstall the software by running the command:
`/opt/OV/SIP/install/removesip`
2. When prompted to continue with the removal, type “y” and press **Enter**.

Glossary

A-B

authentication The process by which a user identifies and validates him/herself to the system.

authentication provider A configured component of the system that authenticates users that attempt to use the system.

authorization The granting of access privileges to an authenticated user that determines what the user can see and do while logged into the system.

C

configuration The combination of settings of software parameters and attributes that determine the way the software works, the way it is used, and/or how it appears.

configuration file A file that contains specifications or information that can be used for determining how a software program should look and operate.

configure To define and/or modify specified software settings to fulfill the requirements of a specified environment, application and/or usage.

customer data filtering The use of attributes as a mask for constraining the data that is to be acted on, used, or displayed in the user interface. In HP OpenView Service Information Portal, the information that is presented in the user interface for a given user login is filtered by the specific management data that is associated with a given role. Customer data filtering can also be described as “customer segmentation.”

customer model A mapping of customers to resources, where resources are associated hosts, interfaces, and services. A customer model can be defined in several XML files, or a mix of programs and files.

SIP 2.0 uses the so-called “Simple Customer Model” that is defined via an XML DTD.

customer model data source A configured URL or file that provides the mappings or partial mappings of customers to resources.

customize To design, construct and/or modify software to meet the needs and preferences of a particular customer or user. For HP OpenView Service Information Portal, customizing is synonymous with assigning to customers what will be displayed to them. Customization tasks include customizing content, tabs, and tab layout, customer filtering, and the setting of options.

customization The process of designing, constructing and/or modifying software to meet the needs and preferences of a particular customer or user.

E

edit permissions That which determines the editing operations that are available to a user through the program interface.

edit permissions level A group of operations that a user is authorized to perform through the program interface. Each level includes all the operations defined by the previous level and adds some additional operations.

extensible

extensible Software functionality whose capability, scope or effectiveness can be increased.

extend The act of increasing the capabilities, scope, and/or effectiveness of a program. The capabilities of HP OpenView Service Information Portal can be extended through the generic module and through the writing of XML.

F

filter A set of attributes and values that act as a pattern or mask through which data is passed. Filters allow matching-relevant information to be extracted and acted on while non-matching-irrelevant information is blocked.

M

Management Data Filter The security mechanism that defines what data is displayed through the portal.

message A communication using text and/or images. In HP OpenView Service Information Portal, messages are presented to customers via the message board module.

Message Board A module that is used for presenting messages to customers.

message content The information that is presented in a message. Message content may include text and/or graphics.

module A self-contained software component that performs a specific type of task or provides for the presentation of a specific type of data. Modules can interact with one another and with other software. In HP OpenView Service Information Portal,

modules present specific sets of functionality to the user through the portal framework. Examples of modules include the Message Board, Service Browser, Network Device Health, and the Alarm Module.

P

page A single display or presentation of information on the World Wide Web. Typically a web page consists of an HTML file, referenced graphics files, and associated scripts.

portal A web site that provides a variety of different types of information and which serves as a gateway to other web sites. HP OpenView Service Information Portal consists of the framework and modules. It provides information and access to other websites through the modules and submodules.

portal framework A program that acts as the basic structure to support other software modules or programs that provide additional functionality for the user. In HP OpenView Service Information Portal, the framework provides a mechanism for the modules to present information to the user. The framework also provides the structure for customization, configuration and extension of the portal's functionality.

portal view Consists of modules, tabs, and view properties. Each user account that is set up by an administrator has one or more roles, and each role is associated with one portal view. A portal view can be shared by multiple users.

portal view file A configuration file that contains specifications or information that can be used for determining how software should look to a given user. In HP OpenView

Service Information Portal, portal view files are XML files that contain all information needed to render a portal view.

R

role That which defines what a user can see and do through the portal at a particular point in time. A role can be shared by multiple users.

role properties An extensibility mechanism used to provide authorization information associated with a role and that is not defined in the predefined role XML elements.

S

skin A setting that controls the visual appearance of the user interface. Skins can determine the color scheme, fonts, graphics, and other attributes presented in the user interface. The skins in the HP OpenView Service Information Portal are based upon W3C's Cascading Style Sheets. Existing skins may be extended, or new ones added to the 'css' files located under the `htdocs/styles` directory.

submodule A portion of a software module that provides a subset of the functionality provided by the module. A submodule performs a specific task or presents a specific set of data. In HP OpenView Service Information Portal submodules present different variations of the type of data presented by the Module. For example, one submodule of the Network Device Health Module presents Network health for Routers while another submodule presents Network health for Servers.

T

tab A page in the user interface that has a small index-card like projection. The projection typically presents the name for the page and allows navigation to the page by clicking. In HP OpenView Service Information Portal the main portal pages have tabs. Service Information Portal provides one tab, but multiple tabs can be created using the Customize Content option on the Options page. Similar types of modules can be grouped together using tabs.

U

user preferences The attributes that are associated with a specific user. In Service Information Portal, user preferences control the name that appears in the portal header, and the color scheme, or "skins" that control the portal colors and fonts.

User-Role Model An authorization model that achieves security by associating users with roles and assigning to each role what the user is able to see and do. The User-Role Model consists of all User Role Package files.

Symbols

? button, 18

A

access to SIP, 22

administration

- checking contents of role database, 293
- configuring shared bookmark groups, 151
- configuring the message board, 148
- displaying verbose error information, 290
- forcing JVM to free up system memory, 288
- improving performance, 289, 291
- increasing size of log file, 286
- refreshing the customer model, 236
- registering a customer model source, 232
- restarting the servlet engine, 287
- setting logging and tracing, 284
- unregistering a customer model source, 233
- viewing customer model reports, 238
- viewing log files, 284

administrator role, 77

- creating and configuring, 103
- getting viewAdmin permissions to all portals, 116

AllData filter, 94

application server

- serving SIP data using HTTPS, 270

attributes

- Authentication element, 255
- command, 196
- embedded HTML, 207
- file, 199
- InterfaceList, 228
- LDAPServerConfig, 248
- NodeList, 226
- Option, 211
- OptionParm, 210
- organization, 224
- ServiceList, 225
- TextParm, 210
- TitleBar, 195
- TopomapObjectList, 230
- URL, 203
- User Role model, 325
- XML Translation, 208

authentication

- model, 258
- planning, 59
- portal, 59

single sign-on, 59

Authentication element, 255

authentication providers, 23

- choosing and configuring, 243
- configuration parameters for custom authentication providers, 263
- configuring user logins for password file authentication, 245

developing a custom provider, 258

development resources, 260

LDAP authentication provider, 61, 246

NNM SSO authentication provider, 61, 252

no-password authentication provider, 61, 243

null authentication provider, 61, 243

password file authentication provider, 61, 244

registering a custom provider, 263

registering supplied providers, 254

supplied with SIP, 61, 242, 259

understanding, 59

web-server authentication provider, 61, 251

authorization

understanding user access to SIP, 22

authorization model

planning, 44

understanding, 22

understanding authorization options, 80

AuthProviderClass attribute, 256

authType attribute, 249

B

banner

customizing, 126

baseDN attribute, 248

bookmarks

accessing the bookmarks administration page, 151

adding bookmark groups via XML, 345

assigning bookmarks to a portal view via XML, 344

changing display order via the GUI, 154

changing display order via XML, 346

creating shared bookmark groups via the GUI, 151

creating shared bookmark groups via XML, 341

default portal and protocol settings, 153

deleting a group of shared bookmarks, 152

Index

- displaying bookmarks in a portal view, 154
- modifying a group of shared bookmarks, 152
- module Edit button, 154
- prerequisite to displaying bookmark groups through a portal view, 153
- removing bookmarks from a portal view via the GUI, 154
- removing bookmarks from a portal view via XML, 346
- understanding, 151

Bookmarks DTD, 347

C

- cascading style sheets, 128, 129
 - classes and descriptions, 131–139
 - creating, 130
- cell phones
 - running SIP, 273
- colors
 - specifying portal colors, 129
- colors and fonts
 - choosing portal skins, 118
- column elements, 140
- command attributes and elements, 196
- commands
 - create_role_db, 102
 - htpasswd, 245
 - presenting command results through a module, 165
 - test_role_db, 293
 - xmlvalidate, 309
- configuration
 - communication using HTTPS/SSL, 270
 - customer model, 299
 - distributed and shared files, 266
 - LDAP authentication, 247, 299
 - NNM SSO authentication, 252
 - portal views, 111, 300
 - refresh model, 303
 - SIP in a distributed environment, 266
 - user logins for password file authentication, 245
 - user preferences, 118, 300
 - user roles, 74, 86, 299
 - web server authentication, 252
 - wireless SIP, 273
- configuration files, 266, 296
 - diagrams of directory structure, 297

- for running SIP in wireless environment, 276
- how and when changes take effect on files, 302
- types of, 297

configuring SIP

- via module Edit pages, 123
- via Options pages, 118
- via SIP Configuration Editor, 66
- via special SIP administrator role, 78
- via XML, 75, 296, 318

connecting management products to SIP, 66

content

- planning portal content, 35
- understanding contributed (unsupported) modules, 145
- understanding how to develop your own modules, 145
- understanding supplied modules, 144

create_role_db command, 102

custom authentication providers

- developing, 258
- developing a login page for, 262
- developing a logout page for, 263
- integrating your own, 59

custom footers, 129

custom headers, 126

customer data segmentation, 22

- alternatives, 85
- creating a SIP customer model, 216
- planning, 56
- understanding, 82
- verifying, 234

customer model

- configuring refresh rate, 236
- creating a SIP customer model, 216
- default port and protocol settings, 313
- developing a custom source, 220
- exporting, 239
- how and when changes take effect, 304, 305
- mapping customers to resources, 217
- overview, 299
- process for implementing SIP customer model, 215
- refreshing, 236
- registering, 232
- sample XML, 218, 219
- understanding customer data segmentation, 214
- using an external customer model, 215

- using SIP customer model, 215
- viewing reports, 238
- customer model DTD, 222
- customer model export destination
 - registering, 239
 - unregistering, 240
- customer model sources
 - creating, 216
 - developing a custom source, 220
 - registering, 232
 - samples, 218, 219
 - understanding, 216
 - unregistering, 233
 - viewing a report, 238

D

- data
 - presenting in modules, 158
 - segmenting for customers, 56
 - understanding customer data
 - segmentation, 214
 - verifying customer data segmentation, 234
- data filtering, 22
 - understanding, 82
- data filters
 - assigning to roles via SIP Configuration Editor, 93
 - defining and modifying, 88
- data segmentation
 - understanding, 82
- data segmentation by customer, 22
 - alternatives, 85
- default management data filter
 - assigning to a user role package, 88
- default protocols and ports, 312
- default role, 80
 - designating, 104
 - determining, 293
- default user, 80
 - designating, 104
 - determining, 293
- defaultMgmtData attribute, 325
- deployment roadmap for SIP, 32
- directory structure diagrams, 297
- display filtering
 - configuring, 235
- distributed configuration files, 266
- distributed environments
 - planning, 63
 - whitepaper, 269

- documentation available for SIP, 17
- DTDs
 - LDAP.dtd, 247, 248
 - OVBBookmarks.dtd, 347
 - OVGeneric.dtd, 190
 - OVMMessageBoard.dtd, 340
 - OVMModuleRegistration.dtd, 187
 - OVPPortalConfig.dtd, 298
 - PortalView.dtd, 140
 - sharedBookmarks.dtd, 342
 - SimpleCustomerModel.dtd, 222
 - UserRole.dtd, 323

E

- edit GUI
 - adding to a Generic module, 183
- edit permission levels
 - assigning to roles, 91
 - overriding via XML, 319
- edit permissions
 - understanding, 44, 76
- elements
 - Authentication, 255
 - column, 140
 - command, 196
 - EditPermissions, 325
 - Generic, 193
 - InterfaceList, 228
 - LDAPServerConfig, 248
 - MgmtData, 325
 - ModuleInstance, 140
 - NodeList, 226
 - organization, 224
 - PortalView, 140
 - PortalViewRef, 325
 - Properties, 325
 - role, 325
 - RoleRef, 325
 - ServiceList, 225
 - sheet, 140
 - SimpleCustomerModel, 222
 - Submodule, 193
 - TopomapObjectList, 230
 - user, 325
 - User Role model, 325
 - UserRolePackage, 325
- embedded HTML attributes, 207
- error messages
 - getting more information, 290

Index

exporting SIP customer model, 239
ExternalAuthenticationProvider, 258
 login page, 262
 main method, 261

F

features
 authentication providers, 23
 authorization, 22
 customer data segmentation, 22
 data encryption using SSL, 23
 data filtering, 22
 firewalls and proxy, 23
 Generic module, 158
 internationalization, 28
 proxying, 176
 wireless environments, 273
file attributes, 199
file authentication provider, 259
filtering data, 22
 display filtering, 235
 segmenting customer data, 56
filters
 assigning to roles, 93
 defining and modifying management data
 filters, 88
 display filters, 235
 management data filters, 76
firewalls, 23
fonts
 displaying Japanese fonts, 279
fonts and colors
 choosing portal skins, 118
footer
 customizing, 129

G

Garbage Collector
 running, 288
Generic element, 193
Generic module, 145
 adding an edit GUI, 183
 adding online help, 155
 adding to a portal view, 188
 configuring for single sign-on, 176
 creating XML, 163
 designing functionality, 162
 developing, 158
 displaying embedded HTML, 171

 displaying HTML files, 168
 features, 158
 giving your module access to SIP data, 177
 login substitution, 179
 presenting command results, 165
 presenting status graphics in submodule
 titles, 184
 presenting URL contents, 173
 process for developing, 159
 proxying capabilities, 176
 registering, 185
 resources for creating, 161
 rules for management data substitution,
 181
 samples, 162
 SIP installation directory substitution, 180
 testing, 189
 tutorial, 160
 understanding, 146, 158
 user role substitution, 180
 variable substitution, 177
Generic module DTD, 162, 190
global portal settings, 298
groups of shared bookmarks
 creating via the GUI, 151
 creating via XML, 341

H

header
 customizing, 126
help
 adding and customizing, 155
 overriding the default help topic, 156
 understanding the help buttons, 18
HTML files
 displaying embedded HTML through a
 module, 171
 displaying through a module, 168
htpasswd, 245
HTTPS
 serving SIP data via HTTPS, 270

I

I18N
 features, 28
 model, 28
index.xml
 sample, 323

integrating your own applications and data,
145
 process, 159
 tutorial, 160
integration and deployment roadmap for
 SIP, 32
InterfaceList attributes and child elements,
228
internationalization of SIP, 28

J

Japanese fonts
 displaying, 279
JAVA_HOME environment variable, 103
Javadoc, 260
JSSE
 installing for use with LDAP
 authentication provider, 246
JVM memory usage values
 adjusting for SIP scripts, 282
 adjusting for Tomcat servlet engine, 281

L

languages
 running SIP in non-English environments,
 279
LDAP authentication, 61, 246
 configuration overview, 299
 default protocols and ports, 312
LDAP authentication provider, 260
 configuring, 247
 registering, 246
LDAPPort attribute, 249
LDAPServer attribute, 248
LDAPServerConfig element attributes, 248
log file
 increasing the size, 286
 viewing, 284
logging and tracing, 284
login name substitution, 179
login page for custom authentication
 provider, 262
LoginPage attribute, 255
logins and passwords
 creating, 245
 deleting, 246
logout page for custom authentication
 provider, 263
LogoutPage attribute, 256
look and feel
 customizing the portal, 126

M

Managed Resources module
 configuring, 234
 example configurations, 235
 verifying correct data with, 234
management data, 44
 rules for substitution, 181
management data filtering
 configuring, 88
 configuring a second level, 235
 understanding, 22, 82
management data filters, 76
 AllData filter, 94
 assigning a default filter, 88
 assigning to roles via SIP Configuration
 Editor, 93
 assigning to roles via XML, 319
 defining and modifying, 88
 NoData filter, 94
management products
 connecting to SIP, 66
 default protocols and ports, 312
mapping customers to resources, 214, 217
memory usage
 adjusting JVM values for SIP scripts, 282
 adjusting JVM values for Tomcat servlet
 engine, 281
message board DTD, 340
message board messages
 accessing the Administration Page, 148
 assigning to a portal view via the GUI, 149,
 154
 assigning to a portal view via XML, 339
 changing display order, 150
 changing the content, 148
 configuring, 147
 creating via the GUI, 148
 creating via XML, 336
 deleting, 149
 removing from a portal view via the GUI,
 150
 removing from a portal view via XML, 340
message display names DTD, 337
MgmtData element, 331
module configurations overview, 299
module registration DTD, 187
module registration files, 299
ModuleInstance elements, 140
modules
 adding an edit GUI to your own module, 183

Index

- adding to a portal view, 122
- Bookmarks module, 145, 151
- changing display order, 125
- configuring, 122
- contributed (unsupported) integrations, 145
- Custom Service module, 37
- customizing online help for, 155
- default port and protocol settings, 314
- determining time to display, 289
- developing your own. *See also* Generic module, 145
- displaying segmented customer data through, 214
- displaying transformed XML content, 175
- Generic module, 145, 158
- giving your own modules access to SIP data, 177
- Managed Resources module, 234
- Message Board module, 145, 147
- modifying in a portal view, 123
- NNM Alarms module, 36
- NNM Network Device Health module, 36
- NNM Reports module, 38
- NNM Topology Map module, 36
- OV Internet Services module, 37
- OV Performance Insight modules, 38
- OV Performance Reports module, 38
- OVO Messages module, 36
- OVO Reports module, 38
- presenting data from HP OpenView products, 144
- process for developing your own, 159
- registering modules with SIP, 185
- removing modules from a portal view, 124
- restoring modules after removal, 125
- sample registration file, 187
- Service Browser module, 37
- Service Cards module, 37
- Service Desk for Specialists module, 38
- Service Desk module, 38
- Service Graph module, 37
- Service Health module, 37
- supplied with SIP, 144

N

NNM

- connecting to SIP, 67
- modules' use of customer model, 214

- SIP modules, 36
- SNMP data collection, 292
- NNM SSO authentication provider, 61, 252, 260
- NoData filter, 94
- NodeList attributes and child elements, 226
- non-English language environments, 279
 - browser settings, 279
 - configuring XML, 280
 - planning, 64
- no-password authentication provider, 61, 243, 259
- null authentication provider, 61, 243, 259

O

- online documentation, 17
- online help
 - adding and customizing, 155
 - assigning a topic as the default help topic for a module, 156
 - overriding the default help topic, 156
 - writing a help topic, 155
- OpenView
 - connecting management products to SIP, 66
 - presenting information from OpenView management products, 144
- OpenView Internet Services, *see* *OVIS*
- OpenView Network Node Manager, *see* *NNM*
- OpenView Operations, *see* *OVO*
- OpenView Performance Insight, *see* *OVPI*
- OpenView Reporter, *see* *OVR*
- OpenView Service Desk, *see* *OVSD*
- OpenView Service Navigator, *see* *OVSN*
- Option attributes, 211
- OptionParm attributes, 210
- organization element, 224
- OVBookmarks.dtd, 347
- OVGeneric.dtd, 190
- OVIS
 - connecting to SIP, 69
 - displaying data, 69
 - module's use of customer model, 214
 - SIP module, 37
- OVMMessageBoard.dtd, 340
- OVMModuleRegistration.dtd, 187
- OVO
 - connecting to SIP, 68
 - module's use of customer model, 214
 - SIP module, 36
- OVPI
 - connecting to SIP, 71

- modules' use of customer model, 214
- SIP modules, 38
- OVPortalConfig.xml, 298
- OVR
 - connecting to SIP, 69
 - modules' use of customer model, 214
 - SIP modules, 38
- OVSD
 - connecting to SIP, 70, 71
 - modules' use of customer model, 214
 - SIP modules, 38
- OVSN
 - connecting to SIP, 68
 - modules' use of customer model, 214
 - SIP modules, 37
- ovwdb
 - refreshing data, 237
 - retrieving filtered data from, 217

P

- package.xml
 - sample, 323
- password file
 - configuring the default password file, 246
- password file authentication, 61, 244, 245
 - configuring user logins, 245
- passwords
 - creating, 245
- PDAs
 - running SIP, 273
- performance
 - improving, 289
 - improving module load times, 291
- Performance Insight, *see OVPI*
- permissions
 - assigning, 91
 - letting administrator edit all views, 116
 - levels of, 76
 - XML files, 308
- portal authentication, 59
- portal authentication provider, 258
- portal configuration file, 298
- portal security, 22
- portal view files
 - creating, 114
- portal views, 44, 76
 - adding Generic modules to, 188
 - advanced configurations, 112
 - assigning to roles via the GUI, 92
 - assigning to roles via XML, 319

- creating via SIP Configuration Editor, 114
- creating via XML, 114
- customization options, 111
- customizing general attributes, 118
- DTDs, 300
- logging in to customize, 116
- overview, 300
- specific to wireless environments, 275
- understanding, 92, 110
- understanding supplied views, roles, and users, 78
- PortalAuthenticationProvider
 - login page, 262
 - main method, 261
- portals
 - choosing refresh rates, 119
 - choosing skins, 118
 - customizing the footer, 129
 - customizing the header, 126
 - planning the content, 35
 - planning the users and roles, 44
 - presenting your own information. *See also*
 - Generic module, 145
 - security, 44
 - specifying color schemes, 129
- PortalView DTD, 140
- PortalViewRef element, 328
- properties, 333
 - assigning to roles, 95
 - role, 45
- proxy capabilities, 23, 176

R

- refresh model, 303
- refresh rate
 - choosing, 119
 - configuring for customer model, 236
- refreshing data from NNM object database, 237
- registering
 - custom authentication providers, 263
 - customer model source, 232
 - Generic module, 185
 - LDAP authentication provider, 246
 - supplied authentication providers, 254
- restarting
 - Tomcat from outside of SIP, 287
 - Tomcat from SIP Admin Pages, 287
- roadmap to deploying and integrating SIP, 32

Index

- role configurations
 - planning, 44
 - role database
 - checking contents, 293
 - role element, 325
 - role properties, 45, 77
 - assigning, 95
 - defining, 95
 - modifying, 95
 - removing, 96
 - RoleRef, 328
 - roles
 - assigning edit permission levels, 91
 - assigning multiple roles via XML, 323
 - assigning roles to users via XML, 322
 - assigning to users, 97
 - assigning to users using wildcards, 97
 - choosing a portal view via XML, 319
 - configuring, 86
 - creating and configuring special portal administrator, 103
 - creating via XML, 318
 - defining, 90
 - designating a default role, 104
 - edit permission levels, 44, 76
 - management data filters, 44, 76
 - overriding editing permissions, 98
 - overriding role display names, 98
 - portal views, 44, 77
 - properties, 45, 77
 - troubleshooting, 107
 - understanding, 22, 76
 - understanding special portal administrator role, 77
 - understanding supplied roles, users, and views, 78
 - understanding the parts of a role, 44
 - updating after editing XML, 102
 - verifying user role configurations, 99
 - XML configuration files, 100
 - roles and users
 - configuring through SIP Configuration Editor, 86
 - configuring through XML, 100
 - determining role database entry, 293
- S**
- saagents.xml file, 275, 277
 - scaling SIP, 27
 - increasing amount of system memory used, 281
 - Secure Socket Layer (SSL)
 - using with SIP, 270
 - security
 - SIP and SSL protocol for HTTPS, 270
 - segmentation of customer data
 - configuring, 216
 - planning, 56
 - understanding, 214
 - Service Navigator, *see* OVSN
 - ServiceList elements and attributes, 225
 - servlet engine
 - restarting from outside of SIP, 287
 - restarting from SIP Admin Pages, 287
 - SessionTimeout attribute, 257
 - shared bookmark groups
 - creating via the SIP Administration Page, 151
 - creating via XML, 341
 - shared configurations
 - default protocols and ports, 312
 - shared SIP configurations
 - default port and protocol settings, 269
 - files, 266
 - whitepaper, 269
 - sheet elements, 140
 - ShowLogoutButton attribute, 256
 - SimpleCustomerModel DTD, 222
 - single sign-on
 - configuring for a Generic module, 176
 - single sign-on authentication, 59
 - SIP Configuration Editor
 - configuring users and roles, 86
 - connecting management products to SIP, 66
 - starting, 86
 - SIPPath.properties, 266
 - skins
 - choosing, 118
 - customizing, 129
 - snmpCollect database
 - monitoring size, 292
 - special properties
 - assigning to roles, 95
 - SSL protocol and SIP, 23
 - Submodule elements, 193
 - substituting management data, 181
 - system memory
 - freeing up, 288

T

tabs

- choosing a default, 121
- creating and configuring, 120
- deleting, 121
- reordering, 121

test_role_db command

- running, 293

testing

- management data filters via the Managed Resources module, 234
- new Generic module, 189

TextParm attributes, 210

TitleBar attributes, 195

Tomcat

- restarting from outside of SIP, 287
- restarting from SIP Admin Pages, 287

TopomapObjectList attributes and child elements, 230

trace files

- setting the level, 285
- viewing, 285

troubleshooting

- setting portal logging and tracing, 284
- user and role configurations, 107

tutorial on integrating your own modules, 160

U

uidAttr attribute, 248

uninstalling SIP

- HP-UX and Solaris, 352
- Windows 2000, 352

unregistering a customer model source, 233

URL attributes, 203

URLs

- configuring single sign-on for your own modules, 176
- presenting contents through a module, 173

user access to SIP, 22

user and role configurations

- overview, 299
- planning, 59
- troubleshooting, 107

user logins

- configuring, 245
- deleting, 246

user name

- specifying in SIP button bar, 118

user preference configuration

overview, 300

user role configuration files

- default.xml, 101
- directory location, 318
- index.xml, 101
- package.xml, 101
- README, 101
- samples.xml, 101
- UserRole.dtd, 101

User Role model, 22

- advanced features, 100
- configuration files, 100, 318
- configuring through XML, 318
- directory, 323
- elements and attributes, 323, 325
- how and when changes take effect, 305
- planning, 44
- understanding, 76
- updating roles after editing XML, 102
- verifying the configuration, 99

user role packages

- changing the name, 105
- creating via SIP Configuration Editor, 86
- creating via XML, 318
- modifying, 86
- understanding, 86

user role substitution, 180

user role XML files

- directory, 100
- understanding, 101

UserRolePackage element, 325

UserRolePackageRef, 325

users

- assigning roles to users via SIP Configuration Editor, 97
- assigning roles to users via XML, 322
- assigning roles using wildcards, 97
- configuring, 86
- creating and modifying, 96
- creating via XML, 322
- designating a default user, 104
- understanding supplied users, roles, and views, 78
- verifying user role configurations, 99

users and roles

- planning, 44
- useSSL attribute, 249

Index

V

- variable substitution, 177
- variables
 - JAVA_HOME, 103
- verbosity
 - turning on and off, 290
- views, *see portal views*

W

- web server authentication
 - supported forms, 251
- web-server authentication provider, 61, 251, 260
 - configuration, 252
- whitepapers
 - Configuring SIP to Use Secure Socket Layer Protocol for HTTPS, 246, 267
 - Configuring SIP to Work in a Distributed Secure Environment, 269
- wildcards
 - defining multiple roles via XML, 323
- wireless environments
 - configuring SIP to run wireless, 273
 - planning, 63
 - starting SIP in, 276

X

- XML, 296
 - configuration files for SIP, 297
 - configuring for non-English language environments, 280
 - displaying transformed XML through a module, 175
 - editing XML files, 308
 - how SIP uses XML, 296
 - rules for editing XML, 308
- XML files
 - backing up, 308
 - permissions, 308
 - rules for editing, 308
 - validating, 309
- XML Translation attributes, 208
- xmlvalidate command, 309